



**A DESCRIPTIVE GRAMMAR OF  
EASTERN LAWA**

**GREG BLOK**

**Presented in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of  
MASTER OF ARTS  
IN  
LINGUISTICS**

**PAYAP UNIVERSITY**  
DEC 2013



Title: A Descriptive Grammar of Eastern Lawa  
Researcher: Greg Blok  
Degree: Master of Arts in Linguistics  
Advisor: Dr. Larin Adams, Ph.D.  
Approval Date: 15th November 2013  
Institution: Payap University, Chiang Mai, Thailand

The members of the thesis examination committee:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Committee Chair  
(Asoc. Prof. Saranya Savetamalya, Ph.D.)
  
2. \_\_\_\_\_ Committee Member  
(Larin Adams, Ph.D.)
  
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Committee Member  
(Asoc. Prof. Thomas M. Tehan, Ph.D.)

Copyright © Greg Blok  
Payap University 2013

## **ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS**

Firstly, I would like to thank and praise God for His enabling presence and His grace, without which I would never have been able to complete this thesis.

I would like to also thank Dr. Larin Adams for taking on the arduous task of supervising this thesis project. Without his guidance and help, this would never have come to completion. Thanks is also due to my examiners who helped me with many constructive comments and corrections.

I am also indebted to my language helpers and all the others in the village we are living in who put up with our “farang” ways and also helped us to slowly learn their language and enter into their world. I hope, in God’s timing, that this thesis will be the first of many resources to encourage and equip the Eastern Lawa people to become not only literate in their own language, but to be people of the Book.

I would like to also express my gratitude to those who have supported us in many ways over the five plus years we have been living in Thailand. I hope you also rejoice with us over this mile-stone in the development of the Eastern Lawa language.

Finally, I must thank my wife for her support and love during the last few years as I have struggled to balance time on my thesis and time with my family. You are awesome!

Greg Blok

Title: A Descriptive Grammar of Eastern Lawa  
Researcher: Greg Blok  
Degree: Master of Arts in Linguistics  
Advisor: Larin Adams Ph.D.  
Approval Date: 15 November 2013  
Institution: Payap University, Chiang Mai, Thailand  
Number of Pages: 113  
Keywords: Eastern Lawa, Mon-Khmer, Grammar, Linguistics

## **ABSTRACT**

This thesis presents a grammar sketch of Eastern Lawa using traditional linguistic terms. Eastern Lawa is an isolating analytic language spoken in Chiang Mai province, in the north of Thailand, South East Asia. It is a Palaungic language of the Mon-Khmer branch of the Austro-Asiatic language family. This research is based on the Bo Luang dialect of Eastern Lawa, which is the most widely spoken of the two main dialects. A set of elicited grammar sentences, narrative texts, recorded conversations and insight from over a year of learning the language were used in this study.

Typologically, Eastern Lawa is a head initial language. This means that modifiers follow nouns (adjectives, numbers etc) and objects follow verbs. Negation in Eastern Lawa can be pre-verbal or post-verbal. The phonology of Eastern Lawa includes 33 consonants and 10 vowels with 12 diphthongs and 2 triphthongs. There is no inflectional morphology and little productive derivational morphology in Eastern Lawa. The word order can vary between SV and VS but is predominantly VS. VOS word order is allowed when introducing new participants in a dialogue. Open word classes include nouns, verbs, adjectives and adverbs. Closed word classes include demonstratives, numerals, classifiers, quantifiers, auxiliaries, prepositions and conjunctions. Noun phrases can have pronouns as heads, compound heads, nominalized adjectives or nominalized predicates as heads and demonstratives as heads. Other parts of the noun phrase include adjectives, relative clauses, prepositional phrases, possessives, quantifiers and number phrases. Verb phrases can include single verbs or multiple verbs.

ชื่อเรื่อง:	ไวยากรณ์ของภาษาละวาทะวันออก
ผู้จัดทำ:	เกรก บลอก
ชื่อปริญญา:	ศิลปศาสตรมหาบัณฑิต สาขาวิชาภาษาศาสตร์
อาจารย์ที่ปรึกษาวิทยานิพนธ์หลัก:	ดร. ลาริน อัดัมส์
วันที่อนุมัติผลงาน:	15/11/2556
สถาบันการศึกษา:	มหาวิทยาลัยพายัพ จังหวัดเชียงใหม่ ประเทศไทย
จำนวนหน้า:	113
คำสำคัญ:	ภาษาละวาทะวันออก, มอญ-เขมร, ไวยากรณ์, ภาษาศาสตร์

## บทคัดย่อ

วิทยานิพนธ์ฉบับนี้ศึกษาไวยากรณ์ของภาษาละวาทะวันออก ตามแนวภาษาศาสตร์ดั้งเดิม ภาษาละวาเป็นภาษาคำโดดที่พูดในจังหวัดเชียงใหม่ ซึ่งอยู่ทางตอนเหนือของประเทศไทย ภูมิภาคเอเชียตะวันออกเฉียงใต้ ภาษาละวาเป็นภาษาปาลวงภาษาหนึ่งที่จัดอยู่ในตระกูลภาษามอญ-เขมร-ภาษาย่อยในตระกูลออสโตรเอเชียติก วิทยานิพนธ์ฉบับนี้เก็บข้อมูลจากภาษาบอหลวง ภาษาถิ่นของภาษาละวาทะวันออก ซึ่งเป็นภาษาถิ่นที่มีผู้พูดมากที่สุดในสองภาษา โดยข้อมูลที่ใช้ในการวิเคราะห์นำมาจากประโยค เรื่องเล่า การบันทึกเสียงสนทนา และความรู้ที่ได้จากการเรียนภาษาของผู้วิจัย

ในทางแบบลักษณะภาษาพบว่าภาษาละวาทะวันออกเป็นภาษาในกลุ่มส่วนหลักนำหน้า ส่วนขยาย หรือภาษาที่มีส่วนขยาย (คำคุณศัพท์, คำบอกจำนวน ฯลฯ) ปรากฏตามหลังคำนาม และกรรมปรากฏตามหลังคำกริยา อย่างไรก็ตามคำแสดงปฏิเสธในภาษาละวาทะวันออกสามารถปรากฏได้ทั้งในตำแหน่งหน้าและหลังคำกริยา ระบบเสียงในภาษาละวาทะวันออกประกอบไปด้วยหน่วยเสียงพยัญชนะทั้งหมด 33 หน่วยเสียง หน่วยเสียงสระ 10 หน่วยเสียง สระประสม 12 หน่วยเสียง และสระประสมสามเสียง 2 หน่วยเสียง ภาษาละวาทะวันออกเป็นภาษาที่ไม่มีหน่วยคำวิภัตติปัจจัย แต่มีหน่วยคำแปลงอยู่บ้างเล็กน้อย ลำดับคำในภาษาสามารถสลับได้ระหว่าง SV และ VS แต่ลำดับคำแบบ VS จะใช้อย่างแพร่หลายกว่า ลำดับคำแบบ VOS จะเกิดขึ้นเมื่อมีผู้ร่วม

เหตุการณ์เพิ่มขึ้นในบทสนทนา หมวดคำเปิดในภาษาละวาทะวันออกมีคำนาม คำกริยา คำคุณศัพท์ และคำกริยาวิเศษณ์ หมวดคำปิดมีคำบอกกำหนด คำบอกจำนวน คำลักษณะนาม คำบอกปริมาณ คำกริยานุเคราะห์ คำบุพบท และคำสันธาน นามวลีในภาษาละวาทะวันออกสามารถปรากฏแบบมีคำสรรพนาม คำประสม คำคุณศัพท์ที่แปลงเป็นคำนาม ภาคแสดงที่แปลงเป็นคำนาม และคำบอกกำหนดที่แปลงเป็นคำนามเป็นส่วนหลักได้ องค์ประกอบอื่นๆ ของนามวลีมีคุณศัพท์ อนุพากย์ขยายนาม บุพบทวลี คำแสดงความเป็นเจ้าของ คำบอกปริมาณ และวลีแสดงจำนวน ส่วนกริยาวลีเป็นได้ตั้งแต่กริยาเดี่ยวไปจนถึงกริยาหลายตัวประกอบกัน

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Acknowledgements.....	ii
Abstract.....	iii
บทคัดย่อ.....	iv
List of Tables .....	xi
List of Figures .....	xii
List of Abbreviations and Symbols.....	xiii
Chapter 1 Introduction .....	1
1.1 Introduction.....	1
1.2 Linguistic family .....	1
1.3 Historical background.....	2
1.4 Demographics .....	2
1.5 Ethnography .....	3
1.6 Dialects of Lawa .....	4
1.7 Methodology .....	6
1.7.1 Fieldwork .....	7
1.7.2 Informants .....	7
1.7.3 Corpus size and type .....	8
1.7.4 Theoretical framework.....	8
1.8 Literature review .....	9
1.9 Limitations and scope .....	10
1.10 Summary .....	10
Chapter 2 Phonology and morphology .....	11
2.1 Introduction.....	11
2.2 Consonant Phonemes .....	11
2.2.1 Proof of Consonants.....	12
2.2.2 Initial Consonants C1(C2) .....	13
2.2.3 Final Consonants.....	14
2.3 Vowels, Diphthongs and Triphthongs .....	15
2.3.1 Proof of Vowels .....	16
2.3.2 Proof of Diphthongs.....	16
2.4 Register .....	17



2.5 Stress and intonation .....	17
2.6 Syllables and phonological words .....	18
2.7 Morphology and word formation.....	19
2.7.1 Reduplication .....	19
2.7.2 Compounds .....	20
2.7.3 Elaborate expressions.....	21
2.7.4 Productive prefixes .....	22
2.8 Summary .....	23
Chapter 3 Basic clause structure .....	24
3.1 Introduction.....	24
3.2 Core arguments .....	24
3.2.1 Subject identification .....	24
3.2.2 Object identification.....	25
3.3 Basic order of constituents in clauses with full verbs.....	25
3.3.1 Intransitive .....	26
3.3.2 Transitive .....	26
3.3.3 Word order statistics .....	28
3.3.4 VOS word order via right dislocation of new participant.....	29
3.4 Non-core arguments.....	29
3.4.1 Recipient .....	29
3.4.2 Beneficiary .....	30
3.4.3 Accompaniment .....	30
3.4.4 Instrument .....	31
3.4.5 Source .....	31
3.5 Non-verbal and copula clauses .....	31
3.5.1 Equative clauses.....	31
3.5.2 Attributive clauses .....	32
3.5.3 Locative clauses .....	33
3.5.4 Existential clauses .....	34
3.5.5 Possessive clauses .....	35
3.6 Summary .....	36
Chapter 4 Word classes.....	37
4.1 Introduction.....	37
4.2 Nouns .....	37
4.2.1 Nominalization.....	37
4.2.2 Personal pronouns .....	39

4.3 Interrogatives .....	40
4.4 Verbs .....	41
4.4.1 Identifying verbs via negation .....	41
4.4.2 Identifying verbs via aspect markers .....	41
4.4.3 Identifying verbs via serial verb constructions .....	42
4.5 Adjectives .....	42
4.5.1 Identifying adjectives via comparative constructions .....	43
4.5.2 Identifying adjectives via colour terms using the copula.....	43
4.6 Adverbs .....	44
4.6.1 Temporal adverbs.....	44
4.6.2 Manner adverbs.....	46
4.6.3 Degree adverbs.....	47
4.6.4 Cause or reason adverbial subordinators .....	47
4.6.5 Condition adverbial subordinators .....	47
4.7 Demonstratives .....	48
4.7.1 Nominal demonstratives .....	48
4.7.2 Locative demonstratives .....	49
4.7.3 Verbal demonstratives .....	49
4.8 Numerals .....	50
4.9 Classifiers.....	51
4.10 Quantifiers.....	52
4.11 Auxiliaries or TAM.....	53
4.12 Prepositions.....	54
4.13 Conjunctions .....	54
4.14 Summary .....	55
Chapter 5 Noun phrases .....	56
5.1 Introduction.....	56
5.2 Structure and order of constituents .....	56
5.3 Heads.....	57
5.3.1 Pronouns as heads .....	58
5.3.2 Attributive compounds as heads .....	58
5.3.3 Possessed nouns as heads.....	58
5.3.4 Demonstratives as heads .....	58
5.3.5 Nominalized adjectives as heads .....	59
5.3.6 Nominalized predicates as heads .....	59
5.4 Demonstratives .....	59

5.5 Adjectives .....	61
5.5.1 Order of adjectives with demonstratives.....	61
5.5.2 Order of adjectives with number phrases.....	61
5.5.3 Order of adjectives with relative clauses .....	61
5.6 Number phrases .....	62
5.6.1 Indefinite reference .....	65
5.7 Relative clauses.....	65
5.8 Prepositional phrase modifiers.....	66
5.9 Possessive noun phrases .....	67
5.10 Coordinate noun phrases.....	68
5.11 Quantifiers.....	69
5.12 Summary .....	70
Chapter 6 Verb phrases .....	71
6.1 Introduction.....	71
6.2 Verb heads .....	72
6.2.1 Single verbs.....	72
6.2.2 Serial verbs.....	72
6.3 Negation.....	74
6.3.1 Post verbal negation using <i>tew</i> .....	74
6.3.2 Preverbal negation using <i>ʔu:</i> .....	75
6.3.3 Imperative negation using <i>pu:</i> .....	77
6.4 Directionals .....	78
6.5 Tense aspect mood.....	79
6.5.1 Aspect <i>hɔit</i> .....	80
6.5.2 Aspect <i>ʔdaŋ</i> .....	80
6.5.3 Tense <i>ʔi:</i> .....	81
6.5.4 Tense/aspect <i>sam</i> .....	81
6.5.5 Diagrams of aspect / tense .....	82
6.5.6 Modality/mood.....	83
6.6 Adverbs .....	84
6.7 Summary .....	85
Chapter 7 Voice and valence changing.....	86
7.1 Introduction.....	86
7.2 Passives .....	86
7.2.1 Adversative passives .....	86
7.2.2 <i>kla:</i> passive like constructions .....	87

7.2.3 <i>puj</i> - non-referential passive like constructions .....	88
7.2.4 Zero agent resultative.....	88
7.3 Reflexives and reciprocals .....	89
7.3.1 Reflexive emphatics.....	90
7.3.2 Reciprocals.....	91
7.4 Causatives .....	91
7.5 Summary .....	92
Chapter 8 Sentence types .....	93
8.1 Introduction.....	93
8.2 Statements (declarative).....	93
8.3 Questions (interrogative) .....	94
8.3.1 ‘Yes-No’ questions .....	94
8.3.2 Tag questions .....	94
8.3.3 ‘Or-Not’ questions .....	95
8.3.4 Content questions.....	95
8.3.5 Ability questions .....	98
8.4 Commands (imperatives).....	99
8.4.1 Negative commands.....	100
8.5 Summary .....	100
Chapter 9 Complex clauses.....	101
9.1 Introduction.....	101
9.2 Coordination .....	101
9.3 Subordination.....	102
9.3.1 Complementation.....	102
9.3.2 Adverbial subordination.....	103
9.3.3 Relative clauses.....	108
9.4 Summary .....	110
Chapter 10 Summary .....	111
Bibliography .....	114
Appendix A La conversation .....	117
Appendix B Boy dog frog story.....	175
Appendix C Tiger and elephant story .....	181
Appendix D How the tiger got its stripes story.....	190
Appendix E Rainstorm story.....	197
Appendix F Bo Luang song .....	208
Resume.....	212

## LIST OF TABLES

Table 1 Examples of differences between dialects of Bo Luang and Bo Sangae.....	5
Table 2 Dialects spoken in different villages.....	6
Table 3 Eastern Lawa consonant inventory.....	11
Table 4 Initial consonants.....	12
Table 5 Examples of words with single initial consonants.....	13
Table 6 Permitted combinations of initial consonant clusters (C1, C2).....	14
Table 7 Examples of words with initial consonant clusters.....	14
Table 8 Final consonants (C3).....	15
Table 9 Complex final consonants.....	15
Table 10 Eastern Lawa vowel inventory.....	16
Table 11 Vowel contrasts.....	16
Table 12 Diphthongs.....	16
Table 13 Eastern Lawa noun compounds.....	20
Table 14 Eastern Lawa noun-verb compounds.....	20
Table 15 Clause types and VS-SV patterns.....	27
Table 16 Word order statistics from La conversation.....	28
Table 17 Percentage of SV/VS clauses.....	28
Table 18 Percentage of SV/VS clauses.....	28
Table 19 Verbal nominalization.....	38
Table 20 Time nominalization.....	38
Table 21 Place nominalization.....	38
Table 22 Personal pronouns in Lawa.....	39
Table 23 Interrogative pronouns.....	40
Table 24 Temporal adverbs.....	45
Table 25 Other time expressions.....	46
Table 26 Demonstratives.....	48
Table 27 Numbers 1 to 10.....	50
Table 28 Numbers 11 to 19.....	50
Table 29 Numbers 20 to 90.....	50
Table 30 Lawa higher numbers.....	51
Table 31 Combination of numbers.....	51
Table 32 Count classifiers.....	52
Table 33 Mass classifiers.....	52
Table 34 Quantifiers.....	53
Table 35 Tense Aspect Mood markers.....	53
Table 36 Prepositions.....	54
Table 37 Conjunctions.....	55
Table 38 Noun phrase structure.....	56
Table 39 Examples of NP combinations.....	57
Table 40 Verb phrase position chart(s).....	71
Table 41 Tense / Aspect markers with different types of events and states.....	79
Table 42 Modality.....	83
Table 43 Lexical causatives and resultatives.....	88

## LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1 Linguistic family of Eastern Lawa .....	1
Figure 2 Thai map with Eastern Lawa area in red .....	3
Figure 3 Geographical distribution of Eastern Lawa villages .....	3
Figure 4 The meaning of <i>lom</i> ‘sharp’ with TAM markers in relation to time .....	82
Figure 5 The meaning of <i>to</i> ‘run’ with TAM markers in relation to time .....	83

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

#	Semantically ill-formed
()	Optional (in examples and schema)
*	Ungrammatical
*()	Obligatory
//	Phonemic transcription (only in Chapter 2)
[ ]	Phonetic transcription (only in Chapter 2)
{ }	Either or (in schema)
∅	Gap
1DL.EXCL	First person dual exclusive
1DL.INCL	First person dual inclusive
1PL.EXCL	First person plural exclusive
1PL.INCL	First person plural inclusive
1SG	First person singular
2DL	Second person dual
2PL	Second person plural
2SG	Second person singular
3DL	Third person dual
3PL	Third person plural
3SG	Third person singular
ACCOM	Accompaniment
ADJ	Adjective
ADV	Adverb
APPL	Applicative marker
ASPT	Aspect
BEN	Beneficiary
C	Consonants (only in Chapter 2)
CLF	Classifier
CLFP	Classifier phrase

CNT.EXP	Counter expectational
COMPL	Completive
CONN	Conjunction
COP	Copula
DECL	Declarative
DEG	Degree
DEM	Demonstrative
DET	Determiner
DUR	Durative aspect
EXP	Experiential aspect
FN	Foot note
FUT	Future marker
IMPER	Imperative
INCEP	Inceptive aspect
INSTR	Instrument
INTERJ	Interjection
LIT	Literal translation
LOC	Location
LRP	Language resource person
MOD	Modal
N	Noun
NEG	Negative
NEG.IMPR	Negative imperative
NMLZR	Nominalizer
NP	Noun phrase
NPROP	Proper noun
NUM	Number
OBJ	Object
OBL	Oblique
PAST	Past tense
PAST.NC	Non-contiguous past
POSS	Possessive marker
POSSP	Possessive pronoun



PP	Prepositional phrase
PREP	Preposition
PRO	Pronoun
PRT	Particle
PRT.NEG	Negative particle
QP	Question particle
QUANT	Quantifier
QW	Question word
RECPL	Reciprocal
RECPT	Recipient
PRO.SUBJ	Reflexive
REL	Relativizer
REL.CL	Relative clause
S	Sentence
SUBJ	Subject
DEM	Demonstrative
SVC	Serial verb construction
TAM	Tense Aspect Modality
V	Verb
V	Vowel (only in Chapter 2)
Vd	Voiced (only in Chapter 2)
Vl	Voiceless (only in Chapter 2)
VP	Verb phrase

# Chapter 1

## Introduction

### 1.1 Introduction

This thesis presents a grammar sketch of the Eastern Lawa language. The Eastern Lawa people are an indigenous group of Northern Thailand with approximately 8,000 speakers located in fourteen villages in the district of Hot, Chiang Mai province. The Ethnologue code for Eastern Lawa is “lwl”.

### 1.2 Linguistic family

Linguistically, Lawa belongs to the Palaungic branch of the Mon-Khmer family of languages, which is part of the Austro-Asiatic super-family (M. Paul Lewis 2009). Note this table is not complete but only has enough details to show Eastern Lawa’s place in related languages in the Mon-Khmer hierarchy.

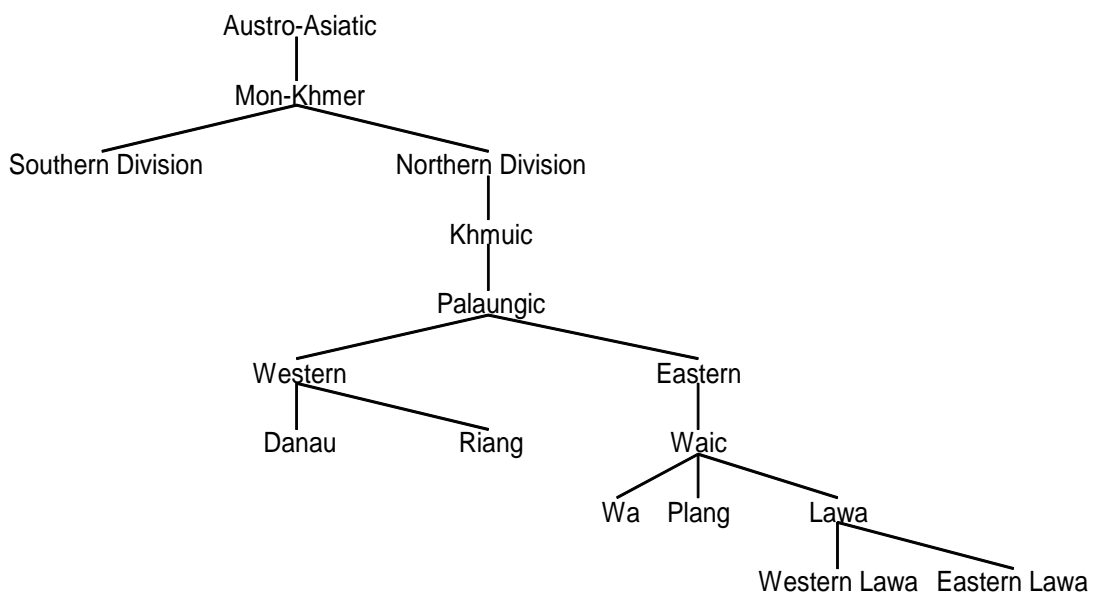


Figure 1 Linguistic family of Eastern Lawa

### **1.3 Historical background**

Although the term 'Lua' is often used for the Eastern Lawa people, it is a somewhat derogatory name (meaning leftovers), used by Thai people for pre-Thai Mon-Khmer inhabitants of Thailand. Both the Eastern and Western Lawa refer to themselves as [*laviə?*] or Lawa.

Northern Thai legend records the guardian spirits of Chiang Mai (Bu Sae Ya Sae) as being Lawa. Legend also has it that these ancestors were cannibals who converted to Buddhism, and they continue to be honoured by a buffalo sacrifice every year on the full moon in June at the foot of Doi Kham (tambon Mae Hiya). Their son, Suthep, is the first descendant in a long line of Sutheps after whom Chiang Mai's main mountain is named. Around the seventh century C.E. a Lawa king named Wilanka was ruling over the area around modern Chiang Mai city. He was defeated by the Mon Queen Jamatewi from Lamphun and the Lawa were driven up into the mountains.

In 1281 C.E. the Thai King Mengrai destroyed Lamphun with help from the Lawa, and the Thai Lanna kingdom was established with Chiang Mai as the capital. A eight day festival is still held each year on the twelfth day of the waning moon of the sixth lunar month at Wat Chedi Luang in Chiang Mai, to venerate a stone city pillar known as Inthakin which was given to the Thai by the Lawa people.

When the Lawa first came to worldwide attention through a National Geographic article, (Kunstadter 1966), the focus was on the Western Lawa who were considered the true Lawa because they lived in more isolated areas and had mostly avoided the cultural influences of the Thai. Language development work was started with the Western Lawa by Christian missionaries in the 1950's and 60's. There is a Western Lawa orthography based on the variety of Lawa spoken in Ban La-up, MaeSariang, (MaeHongSon province), as well as a complete translation of the Christian Bible. In contrast, the Eastern Lawa has no established orthography. A German missionary Freidhard Lipsius worked amongst the Eastern Lawa during the 1970's and 80's and created an orthography which was not adopted, as well as a handwritten phonology and some translated Christian texts.

### **1.4 Demographics**

Eastern Lawa is spoken in 14 villages in two subdistricts (Tambon) of the Hot district (Amphoer), namely Bo Luang and Bo Sali. They are all within the Chiang Mai region of Northern Thailand.

Figure 2 shows a Thai map where the Lawa are located in the north of the country.



Figure 2 Thai map with Eastern Lawa area in red

## 1.5 Ethnography

**Geography:** The Eastern Lawa all live on a mountain plateau between Hot and Mae Sariang. The altitude of the largest village Ban Bo Luang is around 1000 meters above sea level.

Figure 3 shows the distribution of Eastern Lawa villages (mostly) along the main highway between the cities of Hot and Mae Sariang.



Figure 3 Geographical distribution of Eastern Lawa villages

**Economy:** The Eastern Lawa people are mostly gardeners. They grow rice for personal consumption in the rainy season (between July and November), and the rest of the year grow one or two cash crops. This cash crop is typically tomatoes or chilies. Their rice is mostly grown in submerged tiered paddies, although some mountain type rice is also grown. Other vegetables like corn or pumpkin are grown for personal consumption as well, and most people keep chickens (or ducks) and pigs to supplement their diets.

**Religion:** Most Eastern Lawa are animists with an overlay of Buddhism. In the past, much effort was expended appeasing spirits [*phĩ:*], both of ancestors and of natural phenomena such as rivers. These days, a small sacrifice, usually a chicken, is presented to the spirits of the field and the river when planting and harvesting rice. However, if a wealthy person gets sick a water buffalo may be sacrificed to help with their recovery. Many attend regular activities at the Buddhist temples. Besides Buddhism there is also a handful of Eastern Lawa who have adopted Christianity.

**Education:** Eastern Lawa children all attend Thai government schools where they learn to speak, read and write Central Thai. The largest of these schools continues through to grade 9 (Mor 3); however most of the smaller villages only have elementary schooling. Children who want to finish their high school (Matayom) need to leave the village and go to either Chiang Mai or one of the other larger cities. From observation and questioning, approximately half the students who finish grade 9 in Ban Bo Luang, go to Chiang Mai to complete their high school studies.

**Literacy:** Thai government schools first came to the Lawa villages approximately 50 years ago and therefore those over 50 years old are unlikely to be able to read. People between 30 and 50 years old may be able to read. Those under 30 should be able to read. From observation, Eastern Lawa people, like their Thai neighbors, do not tend to read for pleasure.

## 1.6 Dialects of Lawa

Eastern Lawa and Western Lawa are closely related Waic languages spoken in two provinces of Northern Thailand: Chiang Mai and Mae Hong Son.

Eastern Lawa is distinct from Western Lawa, despite being highly cognate, because the two languages are not mutually intelligible based on consistent testimonies of Eastern and Western Lawa speakers and testing by SIL (Nahhas 2007).

There are two distinct dialects spoken among the Eastern Lawa. The main dialect is from Ban Bo Luang [*juan nɛwm*] which is by far the largest Eastern Lawa village, with a population of approximately three thousand people. In actuality, Ban Bo Luang is three villages that have grown together and merged into one. Each village has their own temple and village headman. There are no visible borders between them since they have formed one large village, but the Lawa people still know the boundaries and often refer to the parts by name:

- Ban Bo Luang - ยวง แนวนม - [*juang nɛwm*]
- Ban Bo Sangae - ยวง เตี๋ยง - [*juan tian*]
- Ban Bo Pawaen - ยวง กะเวี๋ยน - [*juan kawian*]

Ban Bo Sangae [*juan tian*] is the other main dialect. Dialect differences, however, do not present any difficulty in comprehension between speakers of these dialects due to their close interaction. These dialects have differences in pronunciation and some lexeme differences. Table 1 shows a few of these differences.

**Table 1 Examples of differences between dialects of Bo Luang and Bo Sangae**

Meaning	Bo Luang	Bo Sangae
1 <sup>st</sup> Person singular (I/me)	[ʔaj]	[ʔawʔ]
snake	[saʔəŋ]	[saʔeŋ]
moon	[k <sup>h</sup> ɛjʔ]	[k <sup>h</sup> eʔ]
eight	[saʔtɛiʔ]	[saʔteʔ]
pine	[ <sup>n</sup> gɛiʔ]	[ <sup>n</sup> geʔ]

Historically, as these villages expanded, people moved out and formed new communities, probably due to lack of space to live in the village, as well as space available in the surrounding areas to plant fields. The differences in dialect were most likely carried over to the new villages as they were founded and the new residents therefore speak the same dialect as their village of origin.

Table 2 shows what dialect the different villages speak.

BL = Bo Luang, BS = Bo Sangae

**Table 2 Dialects spoken in different villages**

Village	Origin / dialect
Bo Luang	BL
Bo Pawaen	BL
Bo Sangae	BS
Kong Loy	BS
Na Fon	BL
Ban Khun	BS
Tong Luang	BL
Bo Sali	BL
Wang Kong	BL
MaeSanam	BL
Kiu Lom	BL
Mae Tian	BL
Samlang	BL
Sanam	BL

From Table 2 it is easy to see that the dominant dialect is from Bo Luang. The dialect that has been chosen as the basis for this thesis and phonology section is from Ban Bo Luang.

Eastern Lawa has a high level of language vitality and is spoken in the home by all ages. Education as well as village notices and official business, however, are usually conducted in Central Thai. There is no evidence that the Eastern Lawa have any negative attitudes towards Thai people. Most Eastern Lawa are bi-lingual speaking their own language and Northern Thai as their second language. Some older people do not speak much Northern Thai and will reply in Lawa when spoken to in Northern Thai. The younger generation tends to be fluent in Central Thai because of the education system and somewhat fluent in Northern Thai due to the presence of Northern Thai people in and around their villages.

## **1.7 Methodology**

This section discusses the fieldwork for this thesis, informants, and corpus size and types.

### **1.7.1 Fieldwork**

The data for this grammar sketch was collected over a period of approximately a year and a half starting in early 2012. The author has been living in the village of Ban Bo Sangae and learning the Eastern Lawa language for most of that time. Often Central Thai was used as the lingua franca for communication and elicitation.

### **1.7.2 Informants**

Many speakers of Eastern Lawa have contributed over the course of the last year and a half.

Birt (S1) is 28 years old and is from the village of Ban Bo Pawaen. Birt speaks Eastern Lawa (BL variety), Northern Thai and Central Thai. He moved to Chiang Mai city to finish high school and for a few years afterwards to work, but has lived most of his life in Bo Pawaen. Birt is currently working in the Panawat gardens as a truck driver and handyman.

Tukta (S2) is 24 years old and is from the village of Ban Bo Luang. Tukta speaks Eastern Lawa (BL variety), Northern Thai and Central Thai. She moved to Chiang Mai city from grade 4 through to graduating with a degree in Political Science from Maejo University (2012). She returned to her village between school terms and in holidays, and has therefore kept up her use of Lawa. Tukta is currently working in tourism in Chiang Mai.

Jenny (S3) is 37 years old and is from the village of Ban Bo Sangae. Jenny speaks Eastern Lawa, (BS variety), Northern Thai and Central Thai. She lived in Chiang Mai city to finish her high school and worked at various cafes in Chiang Mai. She has visited England once on an exchange program and can speak a little English. (Not quite conversational level). She has been living back in the village for the last 3-4 years helping her elderly parents with their shop.

Boon (S4) is 53 years old and is from the village of Ban Bo Sangae. He speaks Eastern Lawa, (BS variety), Northern Thai and Central Thai. He only left the village briefly for military service and a few other jobs that he held, but otherwise has lived most of his life in Bo Sangae. Boon is has his own fields or works part time for us around our house.

Khru A (S5) is 32 years old and is from the village of Ban Bo Pawaen. She speaks Eastern Lawa (BL variety), Central Thai and Northern Thai. She lived in Chiang Mai



to finish high school and was a teacher at the school in Ban Bo Luang. Currently she is working selling insurance and helping us learn Eastern Lawa.

Ta Saai, (S6) is 70 years old and is from the village of Ban Khun. He speaks Eastern Lawa (BS variety) and Northern Thai. Ta Saai was the village head for nearly 20 years and is now retired.

Ta Wan, (S7) is 53 and is an Eastern Lawa native speaker from the village of Ban Khun. He speaks Eastern Lawa (BS variety), Central Thai and Northern Thai. Ta Wan is currently studying in Mae Sariang to be a pastor and plans to start a church in his home village of Ban Khun when he finishes.

### **1.7.3 Corpus size and type**

Various texts were elicited for this thesis including:

LC – La conversation. A conversation between four women about the birth of a child. 252 lines.

BDF – A boy a dog and a frog. A wordless storybook told by Birt. 27 lines.

ET – The Tiger and the elephant. A traditional story told by Ta Saai. 52 lines.

TS – How the tiger got its stripes. A traditional story told by Ta Saai. 44 lines.

RS – Rainstorm story. A wordless storybook story told by Birt. 65 lines.

BL – Bo Luang Song sung by Wandee. 22 lines.

LP – Lawa Proverbs told by Ta Wan. 20 lines.

### **1.7.4 Theoretical framework**

The expectation is that the Eastern Lawa language will be similar to related languages and therefore the description used herein is at a level to facilitate comparison between those languages. No appeal is made to a specific theoretical framework such as LFG or RRG<sup>1</sup>. Rather the language is described using standard grammatical notation (noun, verb, subject, object, etc) that is consistent with Talmy, Shopen and other similar grammatical descriptions.

---

<sup>1</sup> RRG stands for Role and reference grammar (Van Valin). LFG stands for Lexical functional grammar.

## **1.8 Literature review**

Phonological Studies of Lawa: Description and Comparison by Yasujuki Mitani (1978):

This doctoral thesis presents a synchronic description of the phonological systems of four dialects of Lawa, (from Bo Luang, Umphai, La'op and Ban Phae) and a diachronic comparative study is presented of these dialects.

A Descriptive Grammar of Wa by Ma Seng Mai (2012):

This masters thesis presents the grammatical structures of Wa using traditional linguistic terms. Wa is a language spoken in South East Asia. Its language classification falls under the Mon-Khmer sub-group of the Austro-Asiatic language family. This research is based on the Yaong Soi dialect of Wa which is regarded as the main dialect of the Wa Bible translation.

Some general characteristics of Lawa Grammar by Jiranan Komonkitiskun (1985):

This is a description of syntactic characteristics of Western Lawa using the tagmemic model. It is written in 1985 and it is based on La-up dialect spoken in Ban Phae village, Mae Hong Son province in Thailand. It describes Lawa word classes, phrases, clauses and sentences.

The Wa Languages by Gerard Diffloth (1980):

This book looks at the phonology of Wa and tries to reconstruct relationships in Waic languages of Palaungic branch. The data for phonological reconstruction is based on six Waic sources, namely Lawa, Samtau, South Wa, Bible Wa, Kawa and Drages' Wa. Diffloth provides no grammatical analysis.

Sociolinguistic Survey of Lawa in Thailand by Ramzi Nahhas (2006):

A team of researchers from Payap's Linguistic Institute, surveyed both the Eastern and Western Lawa in February and March, 2006, using sociolinguistic questionnaires and intelligibility testing in order to assess the need for further vernacular literature development among the Lawa. This survey of Lawa looked at the comprehension of Western Lawa among various dialects of Western Lawa and also with Eastern Lawa. It also investigated language vitality of Eastern Lawa and Thai proficiency. It concluded that further language development of the Eastern Lawa should be undertaken.

Grammatical Studies of Man Noi Plang by Emily Lewis (2008):

This masters thesis examines certain grammatical features of Man Noi Plang, which is a Palaungic language in the northern branch of the Mon-Khmer family. The

purpose of the thesis is to describe aspects of the grammar of a previously undescribed dialect of Plang. This includes a general description of Plang word classes and syntax, which provides a workable foundation for further grammatical research in this and other Plang dialects.

The following grammar reference works were used because they have limited theoretical commitment, standard usage of traditional terms and a wide range of descriptive tools that do not depend on a particular theoretical bent.

Paul R. Kroeger, *Analyzing Grammar*, 2005.

R. M. W. Dixon, *Basic Linguistic Theory*, 2010.

Timothy Shopen (ed.), *Language Typology and Syntactic Description*, 2007.

## **1.9 Limitations and scope**

An initial word list was collected and following that, grammar texts were elicited along with recordings from language learning activities. Various texts were recorded and transcribed. (See section 1.7.3 and appendices). The findings presented in this thesis are just an overview or sketch of the grammar structure of this language. More research is needed to understand some of the complexities that cannot be fully fleshed out in this thesis or were not completely understood due to the researcher not being a native speaker of the language.

## **1.10 Summary**

This chapter was an introduction to the Eastern Lawa people, their linguistic affiliation, historical background, demographics, ethnography, and culture. The methodology for this thesis was presented along with a list of the fieldwork, informants, corpus size and type and theoretical framework. A brief literature review and the scope and limitations were presented.

## Chapter 2

### Phonology and morphology

#### 2.1 Introduction

This section provides information on the phonology and morphology of Eastern Lawa. It presents the consonant and vowel inventory, characteristics of non-segmental phonation, special acoustic and articulatory features and syllable structure. Consonant and vowel phonemes are shown in sections 2.1.1 and 2.1.5 respectively.

#### 2.2 Consonant Phonemes

It is proposed that there are 33 consonants in Eastern Lawa as shown in Table 3.

**Table 3 Eastern Lawa consonant inventory**

Point of articulation			Bilabial	Labio-dental	Alveolar	Palatal	Velar	Glottal
Manner of articulation								
Stops	Oral	vl. unaspirated	p		t	c	k	ʔ
		vl. aspirated	p <sup>h</sup>		t <sup>h</sup>	c <sup>h</sup>	k <sup>h</sup>	
		vd. prenasalized	<sup>m</sup> b		<sup>n</sup> d	<sup>2</sup>	<sup>ŋ</sup> g	
		vd. preglottalized	<sup>ʔ</sup> b		<sup>ʔ</sup> d			
	Nasal	voiced	m		n	ɲ	ŋ	
		voiceless	m̥		n̥		ŋ̥	
preglottalized		<sup>ʔ</sup> m		<sup>ʔ</sup> n		<sup>ʔ</sup> ŋ		
Fricatives	Slit	voiceless		f				h
	Groove	voiceless			s			
Approx.	Median	voiced	w		l			
		voiceless			l̥			
	Lateral	voiced			r	j		
		preglottalized				<sup>ʔ</sup> j		

<sup>2</sup> Mitani includes <sup>ŋ</sup> (prenasalized palatal voiced stop) in his list of consonants but only gives one example of it, which is the word [ʔə<sup>ŋ</sup>ja<sup>w</sup>p] – ‘wooden bowl’. The word I found for a wooden bowl is [ʔəca<sup>w</sup>p] which has an unvoiced palatal stop. I have not encountered this phoneme anywhere else and therefore do not include it in the table above or the phonetic inventory.

## 2.2.1 Proof of Consonants

Table 4 shows the contrast between Eastern Lawa initial consonants.

Table 4 Initial consonants

Consonant	Example	Gloss	Example	Gloss
<i>p</i> – <i>p<sup>h</sup></i>	<i>puan</i>	‘eat’	<i>p<sup>h</sup>uan</i>	‘five’
<i>p</i> – <i>ʔb</i>	<i>piaʔ</i>	‘father’	<i>ʔbiaʔ</i>	‘to break’
<i>ʔb</i> – <i><sup>m</sup>b</i>	<i>ʔbeij</i>	‘to beat’	<i><sup>m</sup>beij</i>	‘mud’
<i><sup>m</sup>b</i> – <i>m</i>	<i><sup>m</sup>beij</i>	‘mud’	<i>meij</i>	‘to count’
<i>m</i> – <i>ṃ</i>	<i>maic</i>	‘good’	<i>ṃaic</i>	‘sand’
<i>m</i> – <i>ʔm</i>	<i>mɔwʔ</i>	‘approximately’	<i>ʔmɔwʔ</i>	‘rope’
<i>ṃ</i> – <i>ʔm</i>	<i>ṃɔw</i>	‘lungs’	<i>ʔmɔwʔ</i>	‘rope’
<i>ʔb</i> – <i>ʔm</i>	<i>ʔbaw</i>	‘classifier for things’	<i>ʔmaw</i>	‘axe’
<i>n</i> – <i>ṇ</i>	<i>newm</i>	‘true’	<i>ṇewm</i>	‘snore’
<i>n</i> – <i>ɲ</i>	<i>newm</i>	‘to urinate’	<i>ɲewm</i>	‘to sit’
<i>n</i> – <i>ŋ</i>	<i>nɔŋ</i>	‘seed’	<i>ŋɔŋ</i>	‘knee’
<i>n</i> – <i>ʔn</i>	<i>nɔŋ</i>	‘seed’	<i>ʔnɔŋ</i>	‘dead/fallen tree’
<i>ṇ</i> – <i>ʔn</i>	<i>ṇɔŋ</i>	‘man made pond’	<i>ʔnɔŋ</i>	‘dead/fallen tree’
<i>ṅ</i> – <i>ŋ</i>	<i>ṅaɸ</i>	‘to yawn’	<i>ŋaɸ</i>	‘early morning’
<i>ɲ</i> – <i>ŋ</i>	<i>ɲuʔ</i>	‘to push’	<i>ŋuʔ</i>	‘to cry out in pain’
<i>ɲ</i> – <i>j</i>	<i>ɲum</i>	‘tasty’	<i>jum</i>	‘to die’
<i>j</i> – <i>ʔj</i>	<i>joʔ</i>	‘to see’	<i>ʔjoʔ</i>	‘to pour’
<i><sup>ŋ</sup>g</i> – <i>ŋ</i>	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gɔ</i>	‘to fell a tree’	<i>ŋɔ</i>	‘fire’
<i><sup>ŋ</sup>g</i> – <i>ʔŋ</i>	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gjaŋ</i>	‘pregnant’	<i>ʔŋjaŋ</i>	‘short’
<i><sup>ŋ</sup>g</i> – <i><sup>n</sup>d</i>	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gɔ</i>	‘upper back’	<i><sup>n</sup>dɔ</i>	‘rain spouting’
<i>ʔd</i> – <i>t</i>	<i>ʔdaik</i>	‘rattan’	<i>taik</i>	‘to hang’
<i>t</i> – <i>ʔ</i>	<i>ʔaiŋ</i>	‘wall’	<i>ʔaiŋ</i>	‘to return’
<i>t</i> – <i>t<sup>h</sup></i>	<i>tum</i>	‘a tumor’	<i>t<sup>h</sup>um</i>	‘to cover with earth’
<i>t</i> – <i>c</i>	<i>tak</i>	‘tongue’	<i>cak</i>	‘blind’
<i>c</i> – <i>c<sup>h</sup></i>	<i>cuaŋ</i>	‘foot’	<i>c<sup>h</sup>uaŋ</i>	‘light (weight)’
<i>ʔd</i> – <i><sup>n</sup>d</i>	<i>ʔdɛ</i>	‘forehead’	<i><sup>n</sup>dɛ</i>	‘biting fly’
<i><sup>n</sup>d</i> – <i>ʔn</i>	<i><sup>n</sup>daiʔ</i>	‘near’	<i>ʔnaiʔ</i>	‘hat’
<i>ʔtɛ</i> – <i>ʔdɛ</i>	<i>ʔtɛ</i>	‘sweet’	<i>ʔdɛ</i>	‘forehead’
<i>f</i> – <i>w</i>	<i>fiak</i>	‘dark’	<i>wiak</i>	‘stomach’
<i>l</i> – <i>l̥</i>	<i>leit</i>	‘pig’	<i>l̥eic</i>	‘iron’
<i>ɾ</i> – <i>l̥</i>	<i>ɾei</i>	‘thin (material)’	<i>l̥eic</i>	‘iron’
<i>l</i> – <i>r</i>	<i>lak</i>	‘fence post’	<i>rak</i>	‘love’ (Thai loan)
<i>k</i> – <i>k<sup>h</sup></i>	<i>kua</i>	‘ten’	<i>k<sup>h</sup>ua</i>	‘cook’

## 2.2.2 Initial Consonants C1(C2)

The following describes the single initial consonants and initial consonant clusters.

### 2.2.2.1 Single Initial Consonants

The following 33 consonant phonemes /p, p<sup>h</sup>, <sup>ʔ</sup>b, <sup>m</sup>b, t, t<sup>h</sup>, <sup>n</sup>d, <sup>ʔ</sup>d, c, c<sup>h</sup>, k, k<sup>h</sup>, <sup>n</sup>g, ʔ, m, m̥, <sup>ʔ</sup>m, n, <sup>ʔ</sup>n, ŋ, ɲ, ɳ, <sup>ʔ</sup>ɳ, ɲ, w, j, <sup>ʔ</sup>j, r, l, l̥, s, f, h/ may occur in the initial consonant position (C1) without a preceding (C2). (Note: section 2.1.10 discusses syllable shape).

**Table 5 Examples of words with single initial consonants.**

Example	Gloss	Example	Gloss
<i>piəŋ</i>	‘tooth’	<i>muan</i>	‘enjoyable/fun’
<i>tia</i>	‘flower’	<i>nian</i>	‘look’
<i>kiat</i>	‘bite’	<i>ɲiaʔ</i>	‘house’
<i>ʔiak</i>	‘older brother’	<i>ŋɔ</i>	‘fire’
<i>wiak</i>	‘stomach’	<i>sɔʔ</i>	‘dog’
<i>jum</i>	‘die’	<i>liak</i>	‘enter’
<i>riəŋ</i>	‘strong’	<i>fiəʔ</i>	‘monkey’
<i>hiəŋ</i>	‘clever’	<i>k<sup>h</sup>ua</i>	‘clothes’
<i>p<sup>h</sup>uan</i>	‘five’	<i>t<sup>h</sup>əik</i>	‘to spit’
<i>cuəŋ</i>	‘foot’	<i>c<sup>h</sup>uak</i>	‘heavy’
<i>ʔjoʔ</i>	‘to pour’	<i><sup>m</sup>bia</i>	‘forget’
<i><sup>n</sup>diam</i>	‘low’	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gej</i>	‘pine’
<i>ʔbak-ʔbuen</i>	‘between/centre’	<i>ʔdaŋ</i>	‘long’
<i>laʔ</i>	‘leaf’	<i>ʔmiah</i>	‘with’
<i>ŋɔŋ</i>	‘hear’	<i>ŋam</i>	‘blood’
<i>ʔnɔŋ</i>	‘dead/fallen tree’	<i>ʔŋa</i>	‘twenty’
<i>ŋew</i>	‘to smell something’		

### 2.2.2.2 Initial Consonant Clusters

Permitted combinations of initial consonant phonemes into clusters are as shown in Table 6.

**Table 6 Permitted combinations of initial consonant clusters (C1, C2)**

	Bilabial	Velar + alv. approx.	Velar + approx.
vl. stop + vd. lateral	<i>pl</i>	<i>kl</i>	
vl. stop + vd. flap	<i>pr</i>	<i>kr</i>	<i>kw</i>
vl. asp. stop + vd. flap	<i>p<sup>h</sup>l</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>l</i>	
vl. asp. stop + vd. flap	<i>p<sup>h</sup>r</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>r</i>	
vd. prenasal stop + vd. lateral	<i><sup>m</sup>bl</i>	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gl</i>	
vd. prenasal stop + vd. flap	<i><sup>m</sup>br</i>	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gr</i>	

**Table 7 Examples of words with initial consonant clusters**

Initial	Example	Gloss
<i>pl</i>	<i>plawm</i>	- 'a leech'
<i>pr</i>	<i>pruk prak</i>	- 'lightning'
<i>p<sup>h</sup>l</i>	<i>pliaʔ</i>	- 'coconut'
<i>p<sup>h</sup>r</i>	<i>p<sup>h</sup>raŋ</i>	- 'roof'
<i><sup>m</sup>bl</i>	<i><sup>m</sup>blɔŋ</i>	- 'horse'
<i><sup>m</sup>br</i>	<i><sup>m</sup>brak</i>	- 'bat'
<i>kl</i>	<i>klɔm</i>	- 'carry on shoulder'
<i>kr</i>	<i>kra</i>	- 'to drive out'
<i>k<sup>h</sup>l</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>lɔŋ</i>	- 'river'
<i>k<sup>h</sup>r</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>riŋ</i>	- 'to hate'
<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gl</i>	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>glawm</i>	- 'under'
<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gr</i>	<i><sup>ŋ</sup>gram</i>	- 'trash'
<i>kw</i>	<i>kwaŋ</i>	- 'kite / eagle'

### 2.2.3 Final Consonants

Only twelve consonants can occur in the word final position. These are /p, t, c, k, ʔ, h, m, n, ɲ, ŋ, w, j/.

Table 8 shows examples of words with these final consonants (C3).

**Table 8 Final consonants (C3)**

Final	Example	Gloss
<i>p</i>	<i>ŋap</i>	- ‘yawn’
<i>t</i>	<i>kiat</i>	- ‘bite’
<i>c</i>	<i>ʔaic</i>	- ‘sleep’
<i>k</i>	<i>wiak</i>	- ‘stomach’
<i>ʔ</i>	<i>joʔ</i>	- ‘see’
<i>h</i>	<i>kih</i>	- ‘salt’
<i>m</i>	<i>jum</i>	- ‘die’
<i>n</i>	<i>nian</i>	- ‘look’
<i>ɲ</i>	<i>ʔaiɲ</i>	- ‘return’
<i>ŋ</i>	<i>piaŋ</i>	- ‘tooth’
<i>w</i>	<i>ŋɔw</i>	- ‘lungs’
<i>j</i>	<i><sup>n</sup>gej</i>	- ‘pine’

The complex finals (C3)(C4) are combinations of /w/<sup>3</sup> with /p/, /h/, /m/ and /ʔ/. Thus, the complex syllable finals are as follows.

/-wp/ /-wh/ /-wm/ /-wʔ/

**Table 9 Complex final consonants**

Final	Example	Gloss
<i>wp</i>	<i>cewp</i>	- ‘meet’
<i>wh</i>	<i>pewh</i>	- ‘float’
<i>wm</i>	<i>jewm</i>	- ‘sit’
<i>wʔ</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>ɔwʔ</i>	- ‘tree’

## 2.3 Vowels, Diphthongs and Triphthongs

It is proposed that there are 10 vowel phonemes in Eastern Lawa, 12 diphthongs and 2 triphthongs as shown in Table 10.

<sup>3</sup> These could be realized with /-u/ but the (trial) orthography prefers to use /-w/.



**Table 10 Eastern Lawa vowel inventory**

	Front	Mid	Back	Diphthongs			Triphthongs
	Unrounded		Rounded	<i>iu</i>	<i>ia</i>	<i>ui</i>	<i>iau</i>
Close	<i>i</i>	<i>ɨ</i>	<i>u</i>	<i>ia/ iə<sup>4</sup></i>		<i>ua/uə</i>	<i>uai</i>
Mid-close	<i>e</i>	<i>ə</i>	<i>o</i>	<i>ei</i>		<i>vu</i>	
Mid-open	<i>ɛ</i>		<i>ɔ</i>	<i>əi</i>		<i>oi/ɔi</i>	
Open		<i>a</i>	<i>ɒ</i>	<i>ai</i>	<i>ai</i>	<i>au</i>	

### 2.3.1 Proof of Vowels

Table 11 shows examples of vowel contrasts.

**Table 11 Vowel contrasts**

Vowel contrast	Example	Gloss	Example	Gloss
<i>i - ɨ</i>	<i>tia</i>	‘flower’	- <i>tia</i>	‘bored’
<i>i - e</i>	<i>tiʔ</i>	‘one’	- <i>teʔ</i>	Subject pronoun
<i>e - ə</i>	<i>teʔ</i>	Subject pronoun	- <i>təʔ</i>	‘so’
<i>e - ɛ</i>	<i>teʔ</i>	Subject pronoun	- <i>tɛ</i>	‘sweet’
<i>ɛ - a</i>	<i>tɛ</i>	‘sweet’	- <i>taʔ</i>	‘grandfather’
<i>a - ɒ</i>	<i>taʔ</i>	‘grandfather’	- <i>tɒʔ</i>	‘meat’
<i>u - o</i>	<i>juh</i>	‘make / do’	- <i>joʔ</i>	‘see’
<i>o - ɔ</i>	<i>poŋ</i>	‘stairs’	- <i>pɔŋ</i>	‘window’
<i>ɔ - ɒ</i>	<i>tɔm</i>	‘egg’	- <i>tɒm</i>	‘liver’

### 2.3.2 Proof of Diphthongs

Table 12 shows examples of diphthongs.

**Table 12 Diphthongs**

Diphthong	Example	Gloss	Diphthong	Example	Gloss
<i>iu</i>	<i>ʔasiu</i>	‘a little’	<i>vu</i>	<i>nvu</i>	‘put down’
<i>ia</i>	<i>tia</i>	‘bored’	<i>au</i>	<i>ʔklau</i>	‘chicken cage’
<i>ui</i>	<i>tui</i>	‘fat’	<i>ɔi</i>	<i>laʔɔi</i>	‘three’
<i>ia</i>	<i>kiat</i>	‘bite’	<i>aj</i>	<i>kaj</i>	‘have.exists’
<i>əj</i>	<i>lawəj</i>	‘sunset’	<i>ai</i>	<i>təiʔ</i>	‘probably’
<i>ua</i>	<i>muan</i>	‘fun’	<i>ei</i>	<i>hei</i>	‘this’

<sup>4</sup> The diphthongs /ia/ and /iə/ are likely the same but sounding closer to one or the other depending on the person speaking. More investigation is required to see if there is contrast between these. /ua/ and /uə/ are in the same category.

## 2.4 Register

Eastern Lawa has vowel register but it is not contrastive. That is, there are tense/creaky features on some vowels and breathy/lax features on some vowels in certain words, but so far this has not been found to be contrastive. More investigation is required, and the register will not be shown in this thesis unless it is of note.

Examples of words with creaky and breathy vowels.

Breathy	gloss
<i>k<sup>h</sup>ɛ̃</i>	‘moon/month’
<i>k<sub>ɪ̃</sub>h</i>	‘salt’

Creaky	gloss
<i>k<sup>h</sup>ɤwʔ</i>	‘tree’
<i>sətəj</i>	‘eight’

## 2.5 Stress and intonation

Mitani (1978) postulates two internal junctures and one stress phoneme in Eastern Lawa words. The long break is denoted with a space / / and the short break is denoted with a dash /-/. Stress is denoted in the usual way with /'/. The long break / / may occur at certain points in an utterance, marking the border of phonological words, e.g. /ʔ'ɔk paʔ nɛwm-ka'nɔm/ ‘Where do you come from?’ Phonetically the long break, / / represents a lesser amount of cohesion or even a break of continuum. Thus, / / may be replaced in rapid speech by /-/, which would normally mark syllable division.

Final syllables are always stressed and minor syllables are always unstressed. Stress is consistent for words and does not change. A minimal contrast of stress rarely occurs, but in non-final position both stressed and unstressed syllables occur:

- (i) 'ʔa-<sup>1</sup>lɛh            ‘seven’  
      <sup>1</sup>bɯŋ-<sup>1</sup>baŋ        ‘butterfly’
- (ii) nak-<sup>1</sup>nə'ŋ        ‘pomelo’  
      ʔbak-<sup>1</sup>ʔbuən     ‘between’

Mitani found contrasts of tone occurring between certain words, but apparently in a somewhat different manner from the usual tonal contrasts in well-known tonal languages. Stative verbs, such as ‘hot’, ‘cold’, ‘sweet’, ‘true’, etc., in isolation or predicate final, characteristically occur with a rising contour, while nouns and other words in isolation tend to have a falling contour. This results in the apparent minimal contrasts such as the following:

<i>něwm</i>	‘true’	<i>něwm</i>	‘year’
<i>nĩə?</i>	‘married’	<i>ɲĩə?</i>	‘house’
<i>lāj?</i>	‘raining’	<i>lāj?</i>	‘rain’ (n.)

Mitani decided against postulating lexical tone for the following reasons:

1) His informants were inconsistent in assigning the rising contour, stative verbs sometimes occurring with a falling contour. This suggests that when stative verbs were elicited with a rising contour, they may have been treated as complete utterances composed of a single stative verb predicate.

2) In non-final position, words which in isolation have falling or rising contours tend to lose them.

3) When a stative verb follows a noun in a nominal phrase or compound, it takes the falling contour characteristic of nouns; e.g.

<i>mā't</i>	‘good’	<i>ɲia?-mā't</i>	‘good house’
<i>kā'ik</i>	‘hot’	<i>la?awm-kā'ik</i>	‘hot water’
<i>kū'at</i>	‘cold’	<i>ɲiam-kū'at</i>	‘cold season’

Thus, the contrasts rather appear to be part of a unique system of Lawa intonation, but the final solution to the problem must await further investigation.

## 2.6 Syllables and phonological words

In Eastern Lawa, phonemes are arranged into larger phonological units called syllables. The general pattern of the occurrence of segmental phonemes within a syllable can be represented by the formula: C1(C2) V1 (V2)(C3)(C4), where C and V stand for consonants and vowels respectively and ( ) indicates an optional element.

The distribution of phonemes within a syllable can be described in terms of syllable constituents, namely an onset consonant C1, (C2), followed by a nucleus vowel V1 (V2) and an optional final coda (C3)(C4).

Example of monosyllabic words:

*sɔʔ* ‘dog’      *hɛ* ‘bee’  
*kʰɔʔ* ‘tree’      *ɲiaʔ* ‘house’

Some Eastern Lawa words are disyllabic and most of these have an unstressed initial syllable. Examples of di-syllabic words:

*ləʔawm* ‘water’      *ʔaʰmɔih* ‘banana’      *kuiʰtɛt* ‘papaya’  
*səʔəŋ* ‘snake’      *baʰho* ‘pumpkin’

Tri-syllabic Eastern Lawa words less frequent and are usually formed with two unstressed initials. Examples of tri-syllabic words:

*maʔsaʔŋaj* ‘afternoon’      *piʔaʰpəŋ* ‘woman’  
*piʔawʰmaiʔ* ‘man’

## 2.7 Morphology and word formation

Eastern Lawa is an isolating language and therefore tends to favor mono-syllabic words. It is not extremely isolating so di-syllabic words are somewhat common but tri-syllabic words are rare. It has some compounding, reduplication and a few prefixes.

This section presents some morphological features of Eastern Lawa. It describes:-

- i) Word formation by reduplication (section 2.7.1)
- ii) Compounding (section 2.7.2)
- iii) Elaborate expressions (section 2.7.3)
- iv) Productive prefixes (section 2.7.4)

### 2.7.1 Reduplication

The following examples show full reduplication of adverbs. The function of reduplication appears to be to increase or decrease intensity.

- (1) *kʰrəŋ kuɛ* ‘speak softly’ - *kʰrəŋ kuɛ kuɛ* ‘whisper’ (reduced intensity)  
 (2) *tə klaic* ‘run fast’ - *tə klaic klaic* ‘sprint’ (increased intensity)  
 (3) *kok sia* ‘eat some’ - *kok sia sia* ‘nibble’ (reduced intensity)

## 2.7.2 Compounds

Compounding is common in Eastern Lawa. According to Bisetto and Scalise (2005), compounds are divided into three main categories: subordinate, attributive and coordinate. Compounds can be categorized as ‘subordinate’ if there is a complement relationship between the two words or if there is an ‘of’ relation between them like ‘apron string’ meaning ‘a string of an apron’. In ‘attributive’ compounds, a word is used to express the attribute of the other word. In ‘coordinate’ compounds, two words are tied by an implicit conjunction.

Table 13 shows noun-noun compounds in Eastern Lawa. The pattern is [N + N]N.

**Table 13 Eastern Lawa noun compounds**

Compounds	Literal translation	Gloss	Type
<i>laʔawm hɛ</i>	water bee	‘honey’	Subordinate
<i>toʔ leit</i>	meat pig	‘pork’	Subordinate
<i>plɛj kʰɔwʔ</i>	fruit tree	‘fruit’	Subordinate
<i>maʔ piaʔ</i>	mother father	‘parent’	Coordinate
<i>kuin ʔamajʔ</i>	child male	‘boy’	Attributive

Examples of noun-verb compounds are listed in Table 14. The pattern is [N + V]N.

**Table 14 Eastern Lawa noun-verb compounds**

Compound	Literal translation	Gloss	Type
<i>laʔawm ɲoʔ</i>	water drink	‘drinking water’	Subordinate
<i>mai cia</i>	silver spend	‘money’	Subordinate

Verb-noun types of compounds were not found and more research is required to see if they are present in Eastern Lawa.

### 2.7.3 Elaborate expressions

In Eastern Lawa, rhyming four syllable expressions are common.

The following elaborate expressions have a pattern of ABAC using repetition of the first word.

#### (4) ABAC elaborate expressions

- (a) *pu      ʔaik                  pu      sɔm*  
person be.at.stay      person eat  
'husband and wife' / 'a couple'
- (b) *ʔiak                  raʔ      ʔiak                  toʔ*  
brother.older big      brother.older oldest  
'brothers and sisters'
- (c) *to      rum      to      roʔ*  
in      forest in      forest  
'in the forest'
- (d) *mait      ʔap<sup>h</sup>awm                  mait      pewh*  
good heart                  good spirit  
'has a good heart/spirit'
- (e) *kaʔ      hɔ      kaʔ      hej*  
prefix there prefix here  
'here and there'

The next elaborate expressions have a pattern of AABB.

#### (5) AABB Elaborate expressions

- (a) *hew      hew      ʔaʃn      ʔaʃn*  
go      go      return return  
'to describe someone who never stays in one place.'
- (b) *sɔm      sɔm      ʔa'ɛ      ʔa'ɛ*  
eat      eat      sleep sleep  
'lazy, good for nothing'

Eastern Lawa also has an ABCD pattern of four syllable expressions. This type does not have repetition as in the above examples. However, rhyming still occurs.

(6) *ABCD Elaborate expressions*

*lak lɔŋ toŋ teŋ*<sup>5</sup>

‘to describe a person who won’t work or help’

This is the harshest of the three elaborate expressions listed here.

## 2.7.4 Productive prefixes

Lawa has productive prefixes which when combined with another word produce a change in class. The first one listed is *pi?* which changes verbs into nouns. *pi?* is therefore marked as a nominalizer and discussed more in section (3.2).

(7) *puan* - *pi?-puan*

‘eat’ ‘food’

(8) *ʔah* - *pi?-ʔah*

‘speak’ ‘words spoken’

Eastern Lawa has a diminutive prefix *kuin* which is possibly derived from the word *ka<sup>n</sup>dw?* ‘child’ but is also used for diminutives elsewhere.

(9) *ʔε* - *kuin-ʔε*

‘chicken’ ‘chick’

(10) *sɔ?* - *kuin-sɔ?*

‘dog’ ‘puppy’

Eastern Lawa also has a time prefix *ma?* which when added to words will give a specific time reference.

(11) *sa?* - *ma?sa?*

‘early’ ‘morning’

(12) *pu?* - *ma?-pu?*

‘late’ ‘evening’

---

<sup>5</sup> The language informant was unable to give individual meanings of words for this expression.

*kaʔ* is another prefix which is almost always used with words associated with location. The demonstratives *hej* and *hɔ* can be separated from the prefix *kaʔ*, but the others cannot.

(13)

<i>kaʔ-hej</i>	‘here’	<i>hej</i>	‘this’
<i>kaʔ-hɔ</i>	‘there’	<i>hɔ</i>	‘that’
<i>kaʔ-saj</i>	‘below’		
<i>kaʔ-<sup>ɲ</sup>glawm</i>	‘under’		
<i>kaʔ-duaŋ</i>	‘on top’		
<i>kaʔ-<sup>n</sup>ka</i>	‘in front’		
<i>kaʔ-<sup>v</sup>εʔ</i>	‘left’		
<i>kaʔ-dom</i>	‘right’		

No suffixes have been found and would not be expected with Mon Khmer languages.

## 2.8 Summary

This section provided information on the phonology and morphology of Eastern Lawa (relying on work from Mitani and Lipsius). It presented the consonant and vowel inventory, characteristics of non-segmental phonation, special acoustic and articulatory features and syllable structure. Finally, examples of reduplication, compounding, elaborate expressions and productive prefixes were presented.



## Chapter 3

### Basic clause structure

#### 3.1 Introduction

This chapter presents an overview of the basic clause structure of Eastern Lawa<sup>6</sup>. Core and non-core arguments are investigated first in (3.2). The basic order of clause constituents including some word order typology is examined second (3.3). Non-core arguments are examined in section (3.4). Finally, non-verbal clause structures and copula clauses are presented in (3.5).

#### 3.2 Core arguments

There are two core arguments in Eastern Lawa, the subject and the object.

##### 3.2.1 Subject identification

NP subjects in Eastern Lawa are not marked morphologically. Position does not absolutely determine the subject as the clause can have SV and VS word order. However position is indicative as the subject is expected to appear before or after the verb<sup>7</sup>.

Example (14) is VS word order. Note that a conjunction appears before the verb.

- (14) TS.36  
*kam tʰɔ haʔ plɔŋ tʰɔ*  
after.that burn roof DEM  
After that the roof burnt

---

<sup>6</sup> Basic clause structure is presented here before chapter 4 on word classes, chapter 5 on noun phrases and chapter 6 on verb phrases otherwise it would have appeared as chapter 6 which seems too late in the thesis. This chapter order allows the reader to get a grasp on word order and clause structure so that the information presented in the following chapters is in a framework of knowledge of what constitutes a clause.

<sup>7</sup> Except for special circumstances like introducing a new participant where VOS word order is possible. See section 3.3.4.

Example (15) is SV word order.

- (15) LC.70  
ʔi nɔj tʰɔ sam haik maesa lah  
little.one DEM will arrive April eh  
The little one will arrive in April eh

### 3.2.2 Object identification

NP objects in Eastern Lawa are not marked morphologically. Objects always appear after the verb and usually appear after the subject<sup>8</sup>. Objects are optional for some types of clauses.

Example (16) shows an object which is not marked.

- (16) R.28  
ka<sup>n</sup>ɔw? lɔŋ huak tam **poŋ** to? kanaj hɔŋ  
child try climb follow **stairs** in inside room  
The boy tried climbing up the stairs that were inside the room

### 3.3 Basic order of constituents in clauses with full verbs

There is very little flexibility with the order of Eastern Lawa constituents and the word order can be either SVO or VSO (and even VOS via right dislocation when introducing a new participant). However, upon thorough investigation it is clear that the default word order is VSO.

Initially Eastern Lawa was thought to be an SVO language, as Western Lawa is presented as an SVO language in Jiranan Komonkitiskun's thesis on Western Lawa grammar.

Example (17) with SVO word order.

- (17) BDF.13  
sɔ? bəp ŋɔək kop  
dog leap catch frog  
The dog leaped to catch the frog.

---

<sup>8</sup> The only exception to this is when new participants are introduced in a discourse via right dislocation of the subject forcing a VOS word order. See section 3.3.4 for examples.

However, subjects do appear after the verb with regularity, as in example (18).

- (18) LC.36  
*ʔo liak paʔ to k<sup>h</sup>um*  
oh enter you in spa  
oh you enter into the spa.

Next, the transitivity of the verb was investigated to see if it had any bearing on word order.

### 3.3.1 Intransitive

Both SV and VS word order are acceptable with intransitive clauses.

Example (19) is intransitive with SV word order.

- (19) BDF.14b  
*kop paʔtiat*  
frog jump  
The frog jumped

Example (20) is intransitive with VS word order.

- (20) TS.13  
*haʔ plɔŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
burn roofing DEM  
The roofing ignited

### 3.3.2 Transitive

Both SV and VS word order seems acceptable with transitive clauses.

Example (21) is transitive with SVO word order.

- (21) BDF.19a  
*kop ɲewm nian ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ ʔaiŋ*  
frog sit look child return  
The frog sat watching the boy return home

Example (22) is transitive with VSO word order.

- (22) LC.45  
*mak luan pa? ?u: ?eh lwwh lah*  
 enjoy very you everything experience eh  
 You really enjoy all your experiences eh

We can see from these examples that Eastern Lawa word order variation does not depend on the transitivity of the verb.

It also does not seem to be determined by whether the subject is a noun phrase or pronoun.

Table 15 compares SV and VS word order in different clauses to see which options are possible. These examples are mostly in following chapters but references are given here to help track these down in later chapters. Note the \* in the SV/VS column indicates that the order has been tested and was ungrammatical. It can be quickly seen that VS word order is almost always acceptable, but SV word order is only allowed in certain clause types.

**Table 15 Clause types and VS-SV patterns**

Clause Types	Order		Examples		Section
	SV	VS	SV	VS	
Intransitive	ok	ok	(19)	(20)	3.3
Transitive clauses	ok	ok	(21)	(22)	3.3
Complement clauses	ok	(ok) <sup>9</sup>	(205)		9.3.1
Dependent clauses (Time)	*	ok		(212)	9.3.2.1
Dependent clauses (Reason)	ok	ok	(213)	(74)	9.3.2.2/4.6.6
Dependent clauses (Conditional)	*	ok		(216)	9.3.2.3
Dependent clauses (Concession)	ok	ok	(219)	(218)	9.3.2.1.6
Relative clauses	*	ok		(223)	9.3.3
Serial verb constructions	ok	*	(126)		6.2.2.2

The preponderance of VS word order tends to indicate that the default word order in Eastern Lawa is VS. The only exception to this is with serial verb constructions. To confirm this conclusion, statistical analysis was undertaken on a long conversation to see if the VS word order was predominant.

<sup>9</sup> These can be VS also but no examples are found in the data.

### 3.3.3 Word order statistics

Because of uncertainty as to the word order of Eastern Lawa, a basic statistical analysis was performed on the word order of clauses in a natural conversation between three women. A total of 252 sentences of conversation were analyzed and tallied with regards to whether the clauses were Subject-Verb or Verb-Subject word order. Zero subject clauses were counted separately.

Table 16 gives the count of clauses with different word orders in questions, main clauses and subordinate clauses.

**Table 16 Word order statistics from La conversation**

Word order	SV	VS	Zero subject
Questions	4	22	4
Main Clauses	27	110	73
Subordinate Clauses	1	8	3

Table 17 shows these as percentages of the total number of sentences.

**Table 17 Percentage of SV/VS clauses**

Word order	SV	VS	Zero
Questions	13%	73%	14%
Main Clauses	13%	52%	35%
Subordinate Clauses	8%	67%	25%

When the zero subject clauses are taken out of the percentages, (i.e. only those with known word order are calculated in the percentages), the results are a little clearer as shown in Table 18. (Note this is calculated for the 132 sentences that are clearly SV or VS).

**Table 18 Percentage of SV/VS clauses**

Word order	SV	VS
questions	15%	85%
Main Clauses	20%	80%
Subordinate Clauses	11%	89%

Table 18 shows that 80% of the main clauses in this conversation were VS word order, 89% of subordinate clauses were VS word order and 85% of questions VS

word order. This strongly confirms that the predominant word order in Eastern Lawa is VSO<sup>10</sup>.

### 3.3.4 VOS word order via right dislocation of new participant

VOS word order is not very common with Eastern Lawa, but seems to be a discourse feature used when introducing new participants. Below are two examples of VOS word order, both of which introduce new participants in the discourse. Example (23) has the tiger being introduced into the discourse and example (24) has the doctor being introduced.

(23) TS.1a

<i>puih</i>	<i>plɔŋ</i>	<i>sam</i>	<i>juh</i>	<i>muŋ teʔ</i>	<i>nɪŋ</i>	<i>ʔawia tʰɔ</i>
carry.on.back	grass.roofing	FUT	do.make	roof	PRO.SUBJ	place tiger DEM
V	O		V	O		S

The tiger was carrying grass roofing on its back to make itself a roof at its place.

(24) LC.16

<i>caʔ</i>	<i>nat</i>	<i>tew</i>	<i>paʔ</i>	<i>joŋ</i>	<i>mɔ</i>	<i>tʰɔ</i>
possible	make.appointment	NEG	you	maybe	doctor	DEM
	V		O		S	

Didn't the doctor make an appointment with you, maybe?

## 3.4 Non-core arguments

Non-core arguments are typically semantically defined and their syntactic realizations are investigated here. They usually appear in oblique positions in Eastern Lawa. These non-core arguments include recipient, beneficiary, accompaniment, instrument, and source.

### 3.4.1 Recipient

“Recipient” is used for a special kind of goal associated with verbs expressing a change in ownership or possession. The schema below shows the typical position of the oblique object for a recipient argument.

S: [V (NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>) NP<sub>OBJ</sub> **laʔ** NP<sub>RECPT</sub>]

<sup>10</sup> Please note that any schema presented with VS word order in this thesis can usually also be SV word order and visa versa.

Example (25) shows a typical recipient type clause using *la?*.

(25) LC.187

*kɛh kiah sa? ?əŋ la? ma? nɛ*  
able give early he to you eh  
How is it that he was given to you eh?

### 3.4.2 Beneficiary

“Beneficiary” is used for the entity for whose benefit the action occurs. The schema below shows the typical position of the object for a beneficiary argument.

S: [(NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>) V *la?* NP<sub>OBJ</sub> NP<sub>BEN</sub>]

Example (26) shows a sentence with a beneficiary. Interesting to note that even though the NP object is before the beneficiary, the number phrase (that specifies the amount of rice), comes after the beneficiary.

(26) ET.36a

*kiah puʃ to juaŋ hej*  
have people in village this

ET.36b

*huaŋ ?awp pit la? pa? ?aw ti? ?ahuaŋ*  
steam sticky.rice for you me one pot

Have the people in this village steam one pot of sticky rice for you and me.

### 3.4.3 Accompaniment

“Accompaniment” occurs by using the preposition *miah* ‘with’. The following schema shows the accompaniment constituent in a clause.

S: [(NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>) V (LOC) *miah* NP<sub>ACCOM</sub>]

Example (27) shows a typical clause with an accompaniment oblique.

(27)

*pu? ?aj kuat hew kat miah pu?mew te? ?nɔŋ*  
younger 1SG want go market with friend hers only  
My younger (sibling) wants to go to the market only with her friend.

### 3.4.4 Instrument

“Instruments” are marked using the preposition *ta?* and usually follow the affected object.

The position of the instrument constituent is shown in the following schema.

S: [(NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>) V NP<sub>OBJ</sub> **ta?** NP<sub>INSTR</sub>]

Example (28) shows *ta?* being used with an instrument.

(28)

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dɔw?</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>soj</i>	<i>pɛ</i>	<b>ta?</b>	<i>mit</i>
child	DEM	slice	mango	<b>with</b>	knife (TH)

The child sliced the mango with a knife.

### 3.4.5 Source

The preposition *nij* is used to mark “source” in Eastern Lawa. A clause with an NP<sub>SOURCE</sub> can be schematized as below.

S : [(NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>) V **nij** NP<sub>SOURCE</sub> ]

Example (29) shows an NP source which occurs in the clause final position.

(29)

<i>fia?</i>	<i>rai</i>	<b>nij</b>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>o?</i>
monkey	fall	<b>from</b>	tree

The monkey fell from the tree.

## 3.5 Non-verbal and copula clauses

Non-verbal predicates are predicates that are not verbs. This section presents the construction of non-verbal and copula clauses in Eastern Lawa. It presents equative clauses, attributive clauses, locative clauses, existential clauses and possessive clauses.

### 3.5.1 Equative clauses

The copula *mah* links two noun phrases in Eastern Lawa equative clauses. It is obligatory and the schema is as follows:

S<sub>EQUATIVE</sub> : [*mah* PRO NP] or [NP *mah* NP]



If the subject is a pronoun, the common structure tends to be [*mah* PRO NP]. But the pronoun and the copula *mah* can be interchanged. If the subject is a full noun phrase, the pattern is likely to be [NP *mah* NP]. The following are examples of equative clauses in Eastern Lawa.

(30)

*mah tʰɔ ta saw*  
 be 3SG uncle Sa:w  
 He is Uncle Saaw.

(31)

*puj hej mah taʔkɛ*  
 person DEM be village.headman  
 This person is the village headman.

### 3.5.2 Attributive clauses

Attributive clauses in Eastern Lawa consist of a noun phrase (or pronoun) and a stative verb or adjective which indicates the attributes or qualities of the noun phrase. The copula *mah* is only used with colour attributive clauses. Attributive clauses are schematized as below:

S<sub>ATTRIBUTIVE</sub>: [NP V<sub>STATIVE</sub>]

S<sub>ATTRIBUTIVE</sub>: [NP AP]

S<sub>ATTRIBUTIVE</sub>: [NP *mah* colour]

V<sub>STATIVE</sub>: [V ADV]

AP: [ADJ ADV]

The following examples show attributive clauses in Eastern Lawa.

(32)

*puj tʰɔ ɭuaŋ*  
 3SG tall  
 He (is) tall.

(33)

*ʔamɔih ʔi: tum*  
 banana already ripe  
 The banana is already ripe.

(34)

*piʔapəŋ tʰɔ mait*  
 woman DEM good.nice.pretty  
 That woman is beautiful.

Example (35) shows the adjective being intensified with a degree adverb *luan* ‘very’.

(35)

*viw hej mait luan*  
 view this nice very  
 This view is very nice.

Example (36) is ungrammatical as it tries to use the copula *mah* with an adjective, but not a colour attribute.

(36)\*

*viu mah mait*  
 view be nice  
 Intended: the view is nice

### 3.5.3 Locative clauses

The copula *kaj* ‘be.at’ is used in locative clauses. (*kaj* is also used for the verb ‘to have’ in existential clauses). The location of something can also be expressed by using the copula *ʔaik* ‘be.at’ (which is also related to the verb *ʔaik* ‘stay.at’). The locative copulas *kaj* and *ʔaik* are obligatory in locative sentences.

The following schemas show the construction of locative clauses in Eastern Lawa.

S<sub>LOC</sub>: [NP<sub>SUB</sub> ***kaj*** XP<sub>LOC</sub>]

S<sub>LOC</sub>: [NP<sub>SUB</sub> ***ʔaik*** XP<sub>LOC</sub>]

*ʔaik* is used with people, animals and inanimate objects, whereas *kaj* is mostly used with inanimate objects.

Example (37) shows *ʔaik* used for people.

(37)

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ ʔaik /\*kaj ɲiaʔ*  
child be.at house  
The child (is) at home.

Example (38) shows *ʔaik* used with inanimate objects. Note that *niŋ* ‘on’ is included with an inanimate object as it is ‘on’ something compared with example (37) that does not use *niŋ* for people.

(38)

*pap t<sup>h</sup> ʔaik niŋ toʔ*  
book that be.at on table  
The book is on the table.

Example (39) shows that *kaj* can be used for statements with inanimate objects.

(39)

*pap hej kaj niŋ toʔ*  
book this be.at on table  
This book is on the table.

### 3.5.4 Existential clauses

*kaj* is also used for existential clauses. Existential clauses are often used at the beginning of a story. The schematic construction of existential clauses in Eastern Lawa is as below.

S<sub>EXISTENTIAL</sub>: [*kaj* (NEG) NP<sub>SUB</sub> (PP)]

In example (40) *kaj* is used to introduce a story with a tiger.

(40)

*maʔrɔŋ kaj ʔawia niŋ him juaŋ*  
a long time ago exists tiger at close village  
A long time ago there was a tiger close to the village.

Example (41) shows *kaj* can be used in a factual way, (not to introduce a story). This is not a possessive clause as there is no genitive possessor *ja?*.

(41)

*juan ta? kaj k<sup>h</sup>ɔw? ʔke?*  
 Ban Khun **exists** tree pine  
 Ban Khun has pine trees.

Example (42) demonstrates a negative existential.

(42)

*juan newm kaj tew k<sup>h</sup>ɔw? ʔke?*  
 Ban Bo Luang **exists NEG** tree pine  
 Ban Bo Luang doesn't have pine trees.

### 3.5.5 Possessive clauses

One way of constructing possessive clauses in Eastern Lawa is by using the copula *mah* and placing the possessor NP inside a relative clause. The possessive NP has a genitive marker *ja?* introducing it. The possessive clause construction can be schematized as below.

$S_{\text{POSS}} : [NP_{\text{POSSESSED}} \textit{mah pi ja?}^{11} NP_{\text{POSSESSOR}}]$

Example (43) shows the copula *mah* used in a possessive construction together with the relative clause which includes a genitive marker *ja?*. The genitive marker *ja?* is obligatory in this clause.

(43)

*pap hej mah pi ja? Rosie*  
 book this be REL **of** Rosie  
 This book is (the one) that belongs to Rosie.

(44)

*jia? laŋ hej mah pi jia? mɔ prasət*  
 house CLF this **be** REL **of** Mor Prasert  
 This house is (the one) that belongs to Mor Prasert.

<sup>11</sup> This genitive possessive marker takes many different forms including *ja?*, *jia?* and *ja?* depending on the sounds surrounding it.

Another way of constructing Eastern Lawa possessive clauses is using the existential *kaj* ‘have’ or ‘exist’ with the genitive marker *ja?*. In examples (45) and (46) *kaj* is used in possessive clauses. The schema for this kind of clause is as below.

$S_{\text{POSS}}: [(NP_{\text{SUBJ}}) \textit{kaj} NP_{\text{POSS}} \textit{ja?} NP_{\text{POSSESSOR}}]$

(45)

*kaj mah.i ja? te?*  
 have money of PRO.SUBJ  
 (I) have my money

(46)\*

*?aj kaj mah.i*  
 1SG have money  
 Intended: I have money

(46) is ungrammatical because it doesn’t include a possessor.

### 3.6 Summary

This chapter presented the basic structure of Eastern Lawa clauses. Core arguments of subject and object are not marked morphologically. Non-Core arguments are formed using prepositional obliques. Investigation into SV/VS word order concluded that the predominant word order is VS. Further investigation is needed to explain the reasons why there is a change from VS to SV in certain circumstances.

# Chapter 4

## Word classes

### 4.1 Introduction

This section presents word classes in Eastern Lawa. It discusses the open classes: noun, verb, adjective and adverb; and the closed classes: demonstratives, numerals, classifiers, quantifiers, auxiliaries/verbal particles, prepositions, conjunctions and interrogatives. Basically, it lists the members of closed word classes and discusses the distributional properties of open word classes.

### 4.2 Nouns

Nouns usually refer to persons, things, places, ideas, abstract concepts, and they function as subject and object of the verb and object of a preposition or an oblique (Bickford 1998:8). There is no inflectional morphology of nouns in Eastern Lawa.

Nouns function as:

- 1) heads of noun phrases or
- 2) possessor in possessive constructions.

They can be:

- 3) specified with demonstratives, and
- 4) modified by adjective phrases, classifier phrases and relative clauses.

Note: the internal structure of Eastern Lawa noun phrases are discussed in chapter 5.

#### 4.2.1 Nominalization

Nouns can be created through a nominalization process. Only three nominalizers could be found in Eastern Lawa: *pi?*, *ma?* and *ka?*. *pi?* changes a verb or a verb phrase into a noun and is used for agentive nominalization. It is interesting that *pi?* is the same word used for relative clauses and can be glossed here as ‘the one who...’ *ma?* is used for time nominalization and *ka?* is used for place nominalization.

The pattern of nominalization is as below.

N: [*pi?* + VP/S]

N: [*ma?* + VP/S]

N: [*ka?* + location]

Table 19, Table 20 and Table 21 demonstrate nominalizations in Eastern Lawa.

**Table 19 Verbal nominalization**

	Verb	Agentive Nominalization	
		NMLZR	Gloss
a.	<i>sətək</i> 'teach'	<i>pi?</i> <i>sətək</i>	'teacher'
b.	<i>ləha?</i> 'play'	<i>pi?</i> <i>ləha?</i>	'player'
c.	<i>juh</i> 'do/make'	<i>pi?</i> <i>juh</i>	'doer/maker'

**Table 20 Time nominalization**

	Time	Time Nominalization	
		NMLZR	Gloss
a.	<i>sa?</i> 'early'	<i>ma?</i> <i>sa?</i>	'morning'
b.	<i>pu</i> 'late'	<i>ma?</i> <i>pu</i>	'evening'
c.	<i>saŋaj</i> 'sun'/'day'	<i>ma?</i> <i>saŋaj</i>	'daytime'
d.	<i>sewm</i> 'dark'	<i>ma?</i> <i>sewm</i>	'nighttime'

**Table 21 Place nominalization**

	Place	Place Nominalization	
		NMLZR	Gloss
a.	<i>naj</i> 'in'	<i>ka?</i> <i>naj</i>	'inside'
b.	<i>nək</i> 'out'	<i>ka?</i> <i>nək</i>	'outside'
c.	<i>hej</i> 'this'	<i>ka?</i> <i>hej</i>	'here'
d.	<i>hɔ</i> 'that'	<i>ka?</i> <i>hɔ</i>	'there'

## 4.2.2 Personal pronouns

Pronouns are a subclass of nouns which fill the position of a noun phrase. In Eastern Lawa, personal pronouns occur in both subject and object positions and in prepositional phrases. They also perform as genitive pronouns when they follow possessed nouns. Pronouns do not have a separate possessive form but there is a first and third person subject anaphor *te?* that is used primarily with possession. There is no gender distinction in Lawa personal pronouns. There is, however, a formal and an informal second person pronoun<sup>12</sup>. Table 22 summarizes personal pronouns in Lawa.

**Table 22 Personal pronouns in Lawa**

	Singular	Plural
<b>First Person</b>	<i>ʔaj</i>	<i>mu ʔε</i>
<b>Second Person</b> (informal)	<i>pa?</i>	<i>mu pa?</i>
(formal)	<i>ma?</i>	<i>mu ma?</i>
<b>Third Person</b>	<i>puj t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i> <i>ke?</i>	<i>mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i> --

There is no unique possessive form of these pronouns. However, *te?* and *ʔəŋ* are used anaphorically to refer back to the subject for first and third person possession.

Example (47) uses the 3SG *puj t<sup>h</sup>ɔ* –‘he’ and *te?* –‘his’.

(47)

*puj t<sup>h</sup>ɔ   cɔw   kuan   te?   hew   wiaŋ*  
 He      tell   child   his   go   Chiang Mai  
 He told his son to go to Chiang Mai.

As mentioned above, Lawa personal pronouns are the same regardless of whether they are in the subject, object and genitive position. Examples (48), (49) and (50) demonstrate the same form of the third person singular pronoun *mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ* in several grammatical functions, subject, object and genitive. In (48) *mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ* is in the subject position, in (49), it is in the object position and in (50) it functions as a genitive pronoun.

<sup>12</sup> Also note that these 2<sup>nd</sup> person pronouns can change from *pa?* to *paj* and from *ma?* to *maj* depending on the context. Further research is required to ascertain the reasons for using these different forms.



(48)

*mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*    *ʔbein pi juit*  
3PL    hit    REL    drunk  
They hit the drunk person.

(49)

*ʔaj ʔi:        cewp mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
1SG    already    meet    3PL  
I already met them.

(50)

*ŋia?        mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ ri? luan*  
house    3PL    big    very  
Their house is very big.

### 4.3 Interrogatives

An interrogative is a function word used to ask a question. Interrogatives in Eastern Lawa can be separated into two categories: pronouns and other interrogatives. With content questions the interrogative pronouns appear *in situ*. Eastern Lawa also has question particles *ʔam ʔah* and *lɔwh* that are used both with content questions and tag questions. Interrogative sentences are discussed more in section (8.3).

**Table 23 Interrogative pronouns**

Interrogative	Gloss
<i>pen t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	‘who’
<i>man</i>	‘what’
<i>juh man</i>	‘why’
<i>saŋ man</i>	‘when’
<i>kaʔnom</i>	‘where’
<i>məʔ</i>	‘where’
<i>nom</i>	‘which one’
<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ</i>	‘how many’
<i>jaŋ man</i>	‘how’

## 4.4 Verbs

In Eastern Lawa, verbs occur as heads of a predicate and can either precede or follow the subject. This section will investigate identifying verbs.

The following properties are used to identify verbs in Eastern Lawa. Tests (a) and (b) identify both verbs and adjectives; test (c) only applies to verbs.

- a) Can take a negative particle
- b) Can be specified by an aspect marker (Schachter and Shopen 2007:9)
- c) Can occur with *pi?* in serial verbs (adapted from Seng Mai 2012:45)

### 4.4.1 Identifying verbs via negation

One way to identify verbs is that they can be negated.

In example (51), the negation *tew* comes directly after the verb.

- (51) LC.231  
*mɔ? tew ma? te?*  
**suck not** mother PRO.SUBJ  
His mother didn't suckle (him).

Example (52) shows that nouns cannot be negated.

- (52)\*  
*ɟia? tew ɟia? pa?*  
**house not** of 2SG  
Intended: this is not your house.

### 4.4.2 Identifying verbs via aspect markers

Verbs can also be identified when they directly follow aspect markers in a clause.

Example (53) demonstrates two different verbs taking aspect markers.

- (53) LC.167  
*hɔit hewm nɔ? ʔi ʔaic newm nɔ?*  
**finished** bathing eh **already** sleep before eh  
(You) finished bathing eh. (You) already slept before that eh.

Example (54) shows that nouns cannot take aspectual markers.

(54)\*

*hɔit*      *ɲia?*      *ɟia?*      *pa?*  
**finished**    house      of      2SG

Intended: this is no longer your house.

#### 4.4.3 Identifying verbs via serial verb constructions

Verbs can also be identified when they appear in serial verb constructions and are optionally linked with the serial verb marker *pi?*. Only verbs can appear directly before and directly after *pi?*.

Example (55) shows a typical serial verb construction in Eastern Lawa.

(55)

BL22  
*poit*      *pi?*      *kiah*      *la*      *ʔɛ*  
pick.up    **v.chain**    give      to      chicken  
Pick (it) up and give it to the chickens.

Example (56) shows an adjective cannot appear with the serial verb marker *pi?*.

(56)\*

*poit*      *pi?*      *klaic*      *kiah*      *la*      *ʔaj*  
pick.up    **v.chain**    fast      give      to      1SG  
Intended: quickly pick it up give it to me.

#### 4.5 Adjectives

Adjectives modify nouns or noun phrases and can be used as predicates in attributive clauses, (see section 3.5.2). [N Adj] order is typical of VO languages (Dryer 2001), and adjectives in Eastern Lawa come after the nouns that they modify.

The following properties are taken as criteria to distinguish the class of verbal adjectives from other verbs in Lawa.

- a) Adjectives occur in a comparative construction (Dixon 2010)
- b) Copula use is possible with adjective colour terms but not with verbs or non-colour adjectives. (Seng Mai 2012)

#### 4.5.1 Identifying adjectives via comparative constructions

In Eastern Lawa, only adjectives are gradable, verbs are not, therefore, only adjectives can appear before the degree adverb *lia* ‘than’, when in a comparative construction. Comparative and superlative constructions are as in examples (57) and (58). The comparative construction is formed by using *lia* ‘than’ followed by an NP. The superlative construction is formed by a combination of *lia po? te?* ‘than each other’ or *lia puj* ‘than others’.

- (57) **Comparative Construction**      (58) **Superlative construction**  
----- *lia* NP                              ----- *lia po? te?* / *lia puj*

Examples (59) and (60) show examples of comparative and superlative constructions with adjectives.

- (59)  
*la?awm    niŋ    klɔŋ    sa?ŋət    lia    la?awm    tʰalɛ:sà:p    tʰɔ*  
water    in    river    clean    **than**    water    lake    DEM  
The water in the river is cleaner than that lake water.

- (60)  
*la?awm    ʔmɔ    tʰɔ    sa?ŋət    lia    po? te?*  
water    bore    DEM    clean    **than**    **each other**  
That bore water is the cleanest.

Example (61) shows that verbs cannot be used with the superlative.

- (61)\*  
*nam    tʰɔ    tɔ    lia    puj*  
Nam    DEM    run    **than**    **others**  
Intended: Nam runs more than others.

#### 4.5.2 Identifying adjectives via colour terms using the copula

Normally adjectives cannot occur with a copula. However colour adjectives can be used together with copulas in attributive clauses. Example (62) shows the copula *mah* and a colour adjective being used together.

(62)

*neic hej mah si loŋ*  
hat this be CLF black  
This hat is black.

Example (63) however, shows that other adjectives cannot occur with the copular.

(63)\*

*neic hej mah\* saʔŋàt*  
hat this be clean  
Intended: This hat is clean.

It is also not possible to use a copula with a verb together in a clause. Example (64) shows that having the copula *mah* in a sentence with a verb *ŋewm* ‘sit’ is ungrammatical.

(64)\*

*puj tʰɔ mah ŋewm*  
person DEM be sit  
Intended: that person is sitting.

## 4.6 Adverbs

Shopen states that, “The usual functional definition of adverbs identifies them as modifiers of verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.” He goes on to say “In order to extend this definition so as to include sentence adverbs like *unfortunately*, and to allow for certain other possibilities (such as adverbs that modify entire verb phrases), we can say that adverbs function as modifiers of constituents other than nouns.” (Shopen 2007:155)

Modifiers of verbs or verb phrases commonly express time, place, direction, manner and modifiers of adjectives and adverbs commonly express degree.

### 4.6.1 Temporal adverbs

Temporal adverbs are used to specify the timing of an action or event. In Eastern Lawa these can either come at the start of the sentence or the end, [S Adv] or [Adv S]. Subordinating temporal adverbials are discussed in section 9.3.

Example (65) has the temporal adverb at the start of the clause.

(65)

*k<sup>h</sup>ε? ka*                      *kaj*    *saŋ*                      *te?*  
**long.time.ago**    be.is    elephant    one  
 A long time ago there was an elephant...

Example (66) shows the temporal adverb at the end of the sentence. This example could just as well have the time adverbial ‘tomorrow’ at the start of the clause.

(66)

*mu ?ε*    *sam*    *hew*    *wiaŋ*                      *sa?eh*  
 1PL    will    go    Chiang Mai    **tomorrow**  
 We will go to Chiang Mai tomorrow

Table 24 lists temporal adverbs and Table 25 lists other time adverbs.

**Table 24 Temporal adverbs**

Adverb		Gloss
<i>kaŋ</i>	-	‘before’
<i>ka? t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	-	‘before that’
<i>?a:kia</i>	-	‘first/before’
<i>p<sup>h</sup>ot</i>	-	‘till then’
<i>kam t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	-	‘after that’
<i>k<sup>h</sup>εk</i>	-	‘previously’
<i>hɔit t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	-	‘when finished’
<i>miat</i>	-	‘after’
<i>mia t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	-	‘after that’
<i>?bat</i>	-	‘when’
<i>ma?sa?</i>	-	‘morning’
<i>ma?pu</i>	-	‘evening’
<i>k<sup>h</sup>rəŋ səŋaj</i>	-	‘every day’
<i>haik</i>	-	‘until’
<i>k<sup>h</sup>ε? ka</i>	-	‘a long time ago’
<i>newm mah</i>	-	‘since’

**Table 25 Other time expressions**

Adverb		Gloss
<i>ləʔeh</i>	-	'today'
<i>səʔej</i>	-	'tomorrow'
<i>səʔteʔ</i>	-	'two days time'
<i>səʔtiak</i>	-	'three days time'
<i>kəʔewh</i>	-	'yesterday'
<i>kəʔteʔ</i>	-	'two days ago'
<i>kəʔtiak</i>	-	'three days ago'

#### 4.6.2 Manner adverbs

Manner adverbs<sup>13</sup> are used to describe the way or manner in which an action or event is performed. Example (67) has the manner adverb 'fast' before the verb *hew* 'walk'.

(67)

*klaic hew keʔ (laʔ) hoŋhian*  
**fast** go 3SG to school  
 He walked quickly to school

Examples (68) and (69) have the same structure with the manner adverb appearing before the verb.

(68)

*puj tʰɔ co hew (laʔ) hoŋhian*  
 s/he **slow** go to school  
 She went slowly to school

(69)

*maʔ ʔəŋ kuej sə kuan teʔ kɔh*  
 mother 3SG **gently** wake child POSS awake  
 (The child's) mother gently woke her child up

<sup>13</sup> Seng Mai (2012) decided that in Wa these manner adverbs were more verbal than adverbial.

### 4.6.3 Degree adverbs

Degree adverbs serve to grade that which they modify. Eastern Lawa has one main degree adverb *luan* ‘very’ which can modify both adjectives and adverbs. Example (70) has *luan* modifying an adjective and example (71) has *luan* modifying another adverb.

(70)

*puj tʰɔ*    *lʉaŋ*    *luan*  
s/he    tall    very  
He is very tall

(71)

*puj tʰɔ*    *tɔ*    *klaic*    *luan*  
s/he    run    fast    very  
He is a very fast runner

Eastern Lawa has comparative and superlative degree adverbs which were already discussed in section 4.5.3.

(72) Comparative Construction  
----- *lia* NP

(73) Superlative construction  
----- *lia po? te? / lia puj*

### 4.6.4 Cause or reason adverbial subordinators

Cause or reason adverbial subordinators introduce dependent clauses to add information about why the main clause takes place. Cause or reason clauses do not imply some intention or plan by the subject. These are discussed more in section 9.3.2.2.

(74)

*ʔape?*    *tʰɔ*    *ʔu:*    *sa?ɔh*    *mah*    *kʰaw*    *laj*    *tʰɔ*  
shirt    DEM    NEG    dry    because    rain    DEM  
That shirt is not dry because of the rain

### 4.6.5 Condition adverbial subordinators

Conditional adverbial subordinators introduce dependent clauses to add information about the condition or conditions that the main clause takes place under.



Example (75) shows a conditional clause ‘if you have that experience (morning sickness)’ introduced by the adverbial subordinator *pin* ‘if’.

(75) LC.91b

*pin* ca?      *lw*h      *pa*?      |      *ʔu:*   *pa*?   *kuat*   *kok*   *ʔu:ʔeh*   *lah*  
 if   possible   experience   you   |   not   you   want   eat   anything   eh  
 If you have that experience, you don’t want to eat anything eh?

Conditional adverbial subordinators are discussed more in section 9.3.2.3.

## 4.7 Demonstratives

Demonstratives can be classified by their distance from the speaker (‘nearness’ or ‘farness’) and according to the things they identify (‘objects’, ‘locations’, and ‘propositions’) (Bickford 1998:9). The following table presents the demonstratives of Eastern Lawa. There are no plural forms for the demonstratives.

**Table 26 Demonstratives**

	Near	Far	Very Far
<b>Nominal demonstratives (Pointing to objects)</b>	<i>hej</i> – ‘this’	<i>hɔ</i> – ‘that’	<i>tʰɔ</i> – ‘that (over there)’
<b>Locative demonstratives (Pointing to locations)</b>	<i>kaʔhej</i> – ‘here’	<i>kaʔhɔ</i> – ‘there’	<i>tɔt kaʔhɔ</i> – ‘way over there’
<b>Verbal demonstratives (Pointing to propositions)</b>	<i>ʔjaŋ hej</i> – ‘like this’	<i>ʔjaŋ hɔ</i> – ‘like that’	<i>ʔjaŋ tʰɔ</i> – ‘like that’

### 4.7.1 Nominal demonstratives

The demonstratives *hej* ‘this’ and *hɔ* ‘that’ can specify something the speaker is talking about as in example (76) and they can also substitute for a complete noun phrase as in (77).

In example (76) *hej* is specifying a person.

- (76) LC.44  
*jum kok nə lah pi? kaj kuan hej lah*  
tasty eat always eh that have child **this** eh  
It always tastes good eh! That (you) have this (grand) child eh?

Example (77) shows a demonstrative substituting for a subject noun phrase.

- (77) LC.157  
*hej ʔu səŋej bəwh laʔawm neŋ*  
**this** not yellow experience water breast  
This (one) didn't (she) have the yellow milk? (Did she have it?)

#### 4.7.2 Locative demonstratives

The locative demonstratives *kaʔhej* and *kaʔhɔ* refer to places. *kaʔhej* refers to a place which is near the speaker and *kaʔhɔ* to a location which is far from the speaker. *tɔt kaʔhɔ* is used if the place is very far from the speaker and likely not visible. The locative demonstratives usually go at the end of a clause as shown in example (78).

- (78) LC.133  
*hew loŋpoŋ kaʔhɔ*  
go Long Pong over.there  
(I'm) going to Long Pong over there

#### 4.7.3 Verbal demonstratives

In Eastern Lawa the propositional demonstratives that point to the whole proposition are *jaŋ hej* and *jaŋ hɔ*. Dixon refers to these kinds of demonstratives as verbal demonstratives (Dixon 2010:224). According to Dixon, these kinds of demonstratives usually occur as the only verb in a predicate or together with a lexical verb (Dixon 2010:224). In Eastern Lawa they usually occur together with a verb but example (79) shows they can occur together with the copula *mah*.

- (79) LC.197  
*pewh pi p<sup>h</sup>raʔn t<sup>h</sup>ɔ hɔ mah jaŋ hej*  
discard that.one old DEM also be like **this**  
The old one gets discarded also. Its like this.

## 4.8 Numerals

Numerals indicate a precise quantity of something. Table 27 shows the cardinal numerals from one to ten in Eastern Lawa. The cardinal numbers from eleven to nineteen are formed by combining the number ten - *kua*, with the lower numbers. Therefore, the schematic construction of the cardinal numbers from eleven to nineteen will be [*kua* ‘ten’ + NUM] as can be seen in Table 28.

**Table 27 Numbers 1 to 10**

<i>Lawa Numerals</i>	Gloss
<i>te?</i>	‘one’
<i>la?a</i>	‘two’
<i>la?ɔj</i>	‘three’
<i>paɪŋ</i>	‘four’
<i>p<sup>h</sup>uan</i>	‘five’
<i>leh</i>	‘six’
<i>?aleh</i>	‘seven’
<i>sataj?</i>	‘eight’
<i>sataɪŋ</i>	‘nine’
<i>kua</i>	‘ten’

**Table 28 Numbers 11 to 19**

<i>Lawa Numerals</i>	Gloss
<i>kua la?te?</i>	‘eleven’
<i>kua la?a</i>	‘twelve’
<i>kua la?ɔj</i>	‘thirteen’
<i>kua paɪŋ</i>	‘fourteen’
<i>kua p<sup>h</sup>uan</i>	‘fifteen’
<i>kua leh</i>	‘sixteen’
<i>kua ?aleh</i>	‘seventeen’
<i>kua sataj?</i>	‘eighteen’
<i>kua sataɪŋ</i>	‘nineteen’

Table 29 presents Eastern Lawa numbers from twenty to ninety and Table 30 higher numbers.

**Table 29 Numbers 20 to 90**

<i>Lawa Numerals</i>	Gloss
<i>?ŋa</i>	‘twenty’
<i>?ŋɔi</i>	‘thirty’
<i>ra?paɪŋ</i>	‘forty’
<i>ra?huan</i>	‘fifty’
<i>la<sup>n</sup>gre?</i>	‘sixty’
<i>?aŋleh</i>	‘seventy’
<i>ra?tai?</i>	‘eighty’
<i>ra?taɪŋ</i>	‘ninety’

**Table 30 Lawa higher numbers**

<b>Lawa Numerals</b>	<b>Gloss</b>
<i>ti? ʔa:ʝia?</i>	‘one hundred’
<i>ti? pian</i>	‘one thousand’
<i>ti? mian</i>	‘ten thousand’
<i>ti? sian</i>	‘one hundred thousand’
<i>ti? lan</i>	‘one million’

Table 31 shows how Eastern Lawa numbers are combined to form higher numbers. The conjunction *paj* ‘and’ is used to join the numbers when they get longer.

**Table 31 Combination of numbers**

<b>Lawa Numerals</b>	<b>Gloss</b>
<i>ti? ʔa:ʝia? paj ra?huan</i>	‘one hundred and fifty’
<i>ti? pian paj la?a ʝia?</i>	‘one thousand two hundred’
<i>ti mian paj p<sup>h</sup>uan pian</i>	‘fifteen thousand’

## 4.9 Classifiers

Classifiers occur following numbers and quantifiers and the schematic construction is [{NUM/QUANT} CLF]. Classifiers are not obligatory and so are deemed to be part of the number phrase. See section 5.6 for examples of number phrases without classifiers.

Example (80) shows a number phrase – [three + Clf.time] meaning ‘three times’. However, in example (81) the number follows the classifier in the ordinal number construction [Clf + three] ‘the third time’.

(80) **Count Number Phrase**

*la? ʔɔj cuaŋ*  
 three CLF.time  
 Three times.

(81) **Ordinal Number Phrase**

*cuaŋ la? ʔɔj*  
 CLF.time three  
 The third time.

The following table lists some sortal classifiers for Eastern Lawa. The second column provides the example nouns for the classifiers and the third column provides the semantic properties for each classifiers.

**Table 32 Count classifiers**

<i>Classifier</i>	<b>Example nouns</b>	<b>Semantic property</b>
<i>bew</i>	eggs, bananas, rocks	small objects
<i>p<sup>h</sup>uk</i>	book, story, poem, song	literature
<i>ku:</i>	clothes, shoes	a set of something
<i>plah</i>	shirt, towels, clothes	a piece of cloth
<i>səŋai?</i>	day	day
<i>laŋ</i>	house	building
<i>puj</i>	people	human
<i>doh</i>	places	place
<i>cuəŋ</i>	times	times
<i>baŋ</i>	bamboo	sticks?

The following table lists some mass classifiers for Eastern Lawa. The second column provides the example nouns for the classifiers and the third column provides the semantic properties for each classifiers.

**Table 33 Mass classifiers**

<i>Classifier</i>	<b>Example nouns</b>	<b>Semantic property</b>
<i>?ə<sup>n</sup>grewp</i>	rice	a small amount
<i>puəŋ</i>	rice	a mid sized amount
<i>?a<sup>n</sup>də</i>	rice	a large amount
<i>cək</i>	liquids	a cup
<i>paŋ</i>	liquids	a bottle
<i>t<sup>h</sup>aŋ</i>	liquids and mass nouns like rice	20 litres

## 4.10 Quantifiers

Quantifiers state the amount of an entity. Eastern Lawa quantifiers can be categorized into two groups. One kind of quantifier is fixed and they occur in number phrases. Another kind of quantifier is movable and occurs in the number phrase, but can appear elsewhere too. The following table lists both movable and fixed quantifiers in Eastern Lawa.

**Table 34 Quantifiers**

Moveable		Fixed	
Quantifiers	Gloss	Quantifiers	Gloss
<i>hə'ŋ</i>	'many'	<i>ka<sup>m</sup>braʔ</i>	'half'
<i>taŋ ʔɔik</i>	'all'	<i>k<sup>h</sup>rəŋ</i>	'every'
<i>ʔasiw</i>	'a few'		
<i>sia sia</i>	'a little'		

See chapter 5.11 for examples of quantifiers.

### 4.11 Auxiliaries or TAM

Tense–aspect–mood, commonly abbreviated TAM, is the grammatical system in a language that covers the expression of tense (location in time), aspect (fabric of time i.e. a single block of time, continuous flow of time, or repetitive occurrence), and mood or modality (degree of necessity, obligation, probability, ability). (Bybee 1994)

The following table lists some of the TAM markers in Eastern Lawa. The third column gives a rough corresponding meaning to English. Note that ‘tense’ is used here to semantically locate an event in time. Not used as a paradigmatic inflectional marker.

**Table 35 Tense Aspect Mood markers**

Type	TAM	Gloss	Meaning
Tense	<i>ʔi:</i>	PAST	Past
Tense	<i>sam</i>	FUT	Future
Aspect	<i>lɔwh</i>	'experienced'	Past (experience)
Aspect	<i>sam</i>	PROG	Progressive
Aspect	<i>kamrɔŋ</i>	'first time' or 'beginning to'	Inceptive
Aspect	<i>hɔit</i>	COMPL	Perfective
Aspect	<i>ʔmɛ</i>	're-do' or 'do again'	Repetitive
Aspect	<i>ʔdaŋ</i>	'still'	Durative
Aspect	<i>tiən</i>	'un-done action'	Incomplete
Mood	<i>lɔʔ lɔp</i>	CNT.EXP	Counter expectation
Mood	<i>hɔʔ</i>	HORT	Hortative

## 4.12 Prepositions

Functionally, adpositions “convey some information about the referent of the phrasal constituent [preposition plus the NP] that is not expressed by the noun itself” (Schachter and Shopen 2007:34). Adpositions come before the noun phrase in Eastern Lawa and are hence labeled prepositions. The schematic construction is [PP NP]. Prepositions are used to encode non-core arguments in a clause. Non-core arguments containing prepositions are discussed in section 3.4. Table 36 lists some of the prepositions in Eastern Lawa.

**Table 36 Prepositions**

Prepositions	Gloss
<i>kaʔnaj</i>	‘in’
<i>sa<sup>n</sup>daiʔ</i>	‘near’
<i>sarja</i>	‘far’
<i>him</i>	‘beside’
<i>kamt<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	‘after’
<i>niŋ</i>	‘from’
<i>kaŋ k<sup>h</sup>aiʔ</i>	‘behind’
<i>kaʔduanʃ</i>	‘above / on top’
<i>ka<sup>n</sup>glawm</i>	‘under’
<i>miah</i>	‘with’
<i>kiah</i>	‘for’ (give)
<i>p<sup>h</sup>aʔ</i>	‘to’
<i>kaŋka</i>	‘in front’
<i>bak buin</i>	‘among / in center’
<i><sup>n</sup>giap</i>	‘next to’

See section 5.8 for examples of prepositional phrases.

## 4.13 Conjunctions

Conjunctions are words that are used to connect words, phrases or clauses. (Schachter and Shopen 2007:45). Conjoined phrases, clauses and sentences are discussed more in section 9.2. Table 37 presents the Eastern Lawa conjunctions.

**Table 37 Conjunctions.**

Conjunction	Gloss
<i>miah</i>	‘and / with’
<i>rɔh</i>	‘too’
<i>ʔam</i>	‘or’
<i>ʔmɛ</i>	‘but’
<i>kai</i>	‘so’
<i>pin</i>	‘if’
<i>nɪŋ</i>	‘because’

Section 5.10 has examples of coordinate noun phrases and section 9.2 has examples of sentence coordination.

#### **4.14 Summary**

This chapter presented the different Eastern Lawa word classes, including nouns, interrogatives, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, demonstratives, numerals, classifiers, quantifiers, auxiliaries, prepositions and conjunctions.



# Chapter 5

## Noun phrases

### 5.1 Introduction

This chapter outlines the constituent order and internal structure of Eastern Lawa noun phrases. It also discusses different types of noun phrases and some of the modifiers that appear in noun phrases.

### 5.2 Structure and order of constituents

A noun phrase is a phrasal constituent whose head is a noun and functions as a subject, object or object of a preposition. (Dixon 2010:106) Noun phrases consist of a head noun and optional modifiers. Constituents of an NP optionally include a relative clause, an adjective phrase, a number phrase (with or without classifier), a quantifier, a prepositional phrase, a possessive phrase and a demonstrative. In Eastern Lawa the demonstrative is able to move around inside the noun phrase more than the other constituents.

Noun phrase schemas (with the demonstrative in different positions):

NP: [N (ADJP)(RELCL)(QUANT)(POSS)(NUMP)(PP) (DEM)]

NP: [N (ADJP) (DEM) (RELCL)(QUANT)(POSS)(NUMP)(PP)]

The most common structures of the noun phrase are presented in Table 38.

**Table 38 Noun phrase structure**

Head	Modifiers	Possession	Quantity	Orientation
N <sub>HEAD</sub>	ADJP	NP	NUMP	DEM
PRON	RELCL	PRON		PP
	QUANT			

Note that Table 38 shows the options for each slot but does not imply any necessary co-occurrence. Due to space restrictions this research will not explore every single variation. The head noun (or pronoun) precedes one or more optional modifier(s),

possession phrases, quantifier phrases and orientation. Modifiers can be relative clauses, adjective phrases, and quantifiers. Several modifiers can co-occur in the modifier position as seen in Table 39. Not every co-occurrence possibility can be realized and Table 38 is not definitive, i.e. the demonstrative can move to various different positions in the noun phrase. All the example combinations in Table 39 were tested with a predicate that was situated after the noun phrase, to make sure they were in fact noun phrases.

**Table 39 Examples of NP combinations**

	Noun Head	MOD ADJP	MOD ADJP	MOD RELCL	MOD QUANT	POSS	Quantity NUMP	Orientation /Place
	dog	young	small	that.died	many	my/yours	two	those / there
i.	<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>kʰrɔʔ</i>					<i>laʔa(tua)</i>	<i>kəʔhɔ</i> (LOC)
ii.	<i>sɔʔ</i>		<i>tiaʔ</i>		<i>həʔŋ</i>	<i>jaʔ ʔaj</i>		
iii.	<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>kʰrɔʔ</i>		<i>piʔ ʔi jum</i>		<i>jaʔ paʔ</i>		
iv.	<i>sɔʔ</i>				<i>həʔŋ</i>			<i>tʰɔ</i> (DEM)
v.	<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>kʰrɔʔ</i>	<i>tiaʔ</i>	<i>piʔ ʔi jum</i>		<i>jaʔ paʔ</i>	<i>laʔa(tua)</i>	<i>tʰɔ</i> (DEM)

(i) The two young dogs over there

(ii) The many small dogs of mine

(iii) The young dog of yours that died

(iv) Those many dogs

(v) Those two small young dogs of yours that died

The fullest expression of the Lawa noun phrase would almost never occur in natural speech<sup>14</sup> as the context and expediency would eliminate having to use all the modifiers and other constituents.

### 5.3 Heads

The head noun always appears at the phrase initial position. The head of the noun phrase can be a noun, a compound noun, a nominalized predicate, a nominalized adjective or a demonstrative. Noun phrases are in bold in the following examples.

<sup>14</sup> In the same way we are unlikely in English to encounter a noun phrase that says “Those two small young dogs of yours that died over there ...” but it is possible.

### 5.3.1 Pronouns as heads

In example (82) the 3PL pronoun *mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ* ‘they’ is modified by a number phrase *laʔɔj* *puj* ‘three persons’.

(82)

<i>mu t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>laʔɔj</i>	<i>puj</i>	<i>hew</i>
3SG	three	CLF	go
The three of them went			

### 5.3.2 Attributive compounds as heads

In example (83), the head of the noun phrase is an attributive compound *ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ* *ʔamaj* ‘boy’.

(83) R.1

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ</i>	<i>ʔamaj</i>	<i>cɔŋ</i>	<i>poʔ</i>	<i>niŋ</i>	<i>pɔŋ</i>
child	male	stand	next to	at	<i>window</i>
A boy stands next to a window					

### 5.3.3 Possessed nouns as heads

In example (84) the head of the noun phrase is a possessed noun.

(84) BDF.2

<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>jaʔ</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>	<i>newm</i>
dog	of	his	sit
His dog sat			

### 5.3.4 Demonstratives as heads

In example (85) a demonstrative is standing in as the head and is coreferential with the new mother who is mentioned elsewhere in the conversation.

(85) LC.157

<i>hej</i>	<i>ʔu:</i>	<i>səŋej</i>	<i>lɔwh</i>	<i>laʔawm</i>	<i>neŋ</i>
this (one)	not	yellow	or not	water	breast
This one didn’t (she) have the yellow milk or not? (Did she have it?)					

### 5.3.5 Nominalized adjectives as heads

Example (86) has a nominalized adjective as the head of a possessed NP.

- (86) LC.19
- |               |            |            |            |             |                |           |
|---------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------|----------------|-----------|
| <i>ʔi nɔj</i> | <i>ɲaʔ</i> | <i>ʔaj</i> | <i>kit</i> | <i>lɔwh</i> | <i>cum toŋ</i> | <i>hɔ</i> |
| little.one    | of         | my         | born       | experienced | Chom Thong     | also      |
- My little one was born in Chom Thong also

### 5.3.6 Nominalized predicates as heads

Example (87) has a nominalized predicate, ‘that first one (born)’ as the head.

- (87) LC.21
- |            |              |            |               |             |            |            |
|------------|--------------|------------|---------------|-------------|------------|------------|
| <i>piʔ</i> | <i>ʔakia</i> | <i>tʰɔ</i> | <i>saʔŋej</i> | <i>lɔwh</i> | <i>sia</i> | <i>sia</i> |
| REL        | first        | that       | jaundice      | experienced | little     | little     |
- That first one (born) was a little jaundice

## 5.4 Demonstratives

Demonstratives are quite flexible in where they can appear in a noun phrase but they must follow the noun, (unless they are standing in for the noun as in 5.3.4).

The schematic construction for a simple noun phrase with a demonstrative is as below.

NP: [N<sub>Head</sub> DEM]

Examples (88), (89) and (90) show that the order of the demonstrative is flexible<sup>15</sup> when a number phrase and possession are introduced into the clause. They also show that the classifier is optional.

- (88)
- |            |             |              |            |            |            |            |             |
|------------|-------------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| <i>sɔʔ</i> | <i>laʔa</i> | <i>(tua)</i> | <i>jaʔ</i> | <i>ʔaj</i> | <i>hej</i> | <i>sɔm</i> | <i>ʔawp</i> |
| dog        | two         | CLF          | of         | my         | these      | eat        | rice        |
- These two dogs of mine eat rice

<sup>15</sup> According to the language informants the meaning of (88), (89) and (90) do not change. However example (88) is apparently the most natural way of saying it.

(89)

<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>laʔa</i>	<i>hej</i>	<i>jaʔ</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>	<i>sɔm</i>	<i>ʔawp</i>
dog	two	these	of	my	eat	rice

These two dogs of mine...

(90)

<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>hej</i>	<i>laʔa</i>	<i>jaʔ</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>	<i>sɔm</i>	<i>ʔawp</i>
dog	these	two	of	my	eat	rice

These two dogs of mine...

This flexibility in the location of the demonstrative doesn't carry over to NPs with a relative clause. Example (91) consists of a noun phrase with a head noun and a demonstrative<sup>16</sup>. The demonstrative *hej* directly follows the head noun *ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ* 'child'.

(91)

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ</i>	<i>hej</i>	<i>ʔu:</i>	<i>kaj</i>	<i>sataŋ</i>	<i>ʔiaʔ</i>	<i>ʔaiŋ</i>	<i>juan</i>	<i>teʔ</i>
child	this	not	have	money	his	return	village	his

The child without money returned to his village

In (92), the same content was attempted to be expressed with a complex noun phrase composed of a head noun, a relative clause and a demonstrative with the demonstrative coming after the relative clause. It turns out to be ungrammatical to place the demonstrative *hej* after the relative clause. So we can surmise from this that demonstratives must come before relative clauses in an NP.

(92)\*

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ</i>	<i>piʔ</i>	<i>ʔu:</i>	<i>kaj</i>	<i>sataŋ</i>	<i>ʔiaʔ</i>	<i>hej</i>	<i>ʔaiŋ</i>	<i>juan</i>	<i>teʔ</i>
child	who	not	have	money	his	this	return	village	his

Intended: The child without money returned to his village

---

<sup>16</sup> Presumably there is a zero relativizer before '*ʔu kaj sataŋ ʔiaʔ*' making it a relative clause.

## 5.5 Adjectives

Adjectives in Eastern Lawa immediately follow the nouns that they modify within a noun phrase. The schema for a simple noun phrase with an adjective is as follows.

NP: [N<sub>Head</sub> AP]

### 5.5.1 Order of adjectives with demonstratives

Example (93) shows an adjective phrase modifying the attributes of the head noun where the adjective *ri?* ‘big’ directly follows the head noun *nia?* ‘house’ and precedes the demonstrative *t<sup>h</sup>ɔ* ‘that’.

(93)

<i>nia?</i>	<i>ri?</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>p<sup>h</sup>luj</i>	<i>ŋɔ</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>
house	big	that	burn	fire	3SG

That big house burnt down

If the order of the adjective and the demonstrative are swapped it becomes an attributive clause ‘The house is big’. So the adjective must come before the demonstrative.

### 5.5.2 Order of adjectives with number phrases

Example (94) shows the adjective located before the number phrase. If placed after the number phrase it becomes attributive again ‘those three houses are big’.

(94)

<i>nia?</i>	<i>ri?</i>	<i>laʔɔj</i>	<i>laŋ</i>	<i>(t<sup>h</sup>ɔ)</i>	<i>p<sup>h</sup>luj</i>	<i>ŋɔ</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>
house	big	three	CLF.house	those	burn	fire	3SG

Those three big houses, they burned down.

### 5.5.3 Order of adjectives with relative clauses

Example (95) shows that a relative clause must come after the adjective. The demonstrative must come before the relative clause and is optional. If the adjective appears after the relative clause it becomes attributive again. (The house that burnt down was big).

(95)

<i>ɲia?</i>	<i>ri?</i>	<i>(hej)</i>	<i>pi?</i>	<i>ʔi:</i>	<i>hɔit</i>	<i>p<sup>h</sup>luj</i>		<i>sam</i>	<i>boh</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>rɔw?</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i> <sup>17</sup>
house	big	this	that	already	finished	burn		will	build	again	PRO.SUBJ

This big house that burnt down, will be built again.

The conclusion with adjectives is that they must come directly after the head noun in Eastern Lawa and cannot have other constituents in between.

## 5.6 Number phrases

A number phrase occurs after the head noun in a simple noun phrase. Numerals<sup>18</sup> come after the noun and can optionally co-occur with a classifier; therefore they are not considered part of a classifier phrase, but instead are labeled as number phrases. The schema for a noun phrase with a number phrase is as below.

NP: [N<sub>Head</sub> NUMP]

Example (96) provides a simple noun phrase consisting of a head noun *tɔm* ‘egg’ and a number phrase composed of a number *laʔa* ‘two’ and a classifier *ʔbewh*.

(96)

<i>tɔm</i>	<i>laʔa</i>	<i>ʔbewh</i>
egg	two	CLF.round.objects

Two eggs

Example (97) shows that the classifier is optional and doesn’t need to be included if a demonstrative is present.

(97)

<i>puj</i>	<i>laʔa</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>
people	two	those

Those two people

---

<sup>17</sup> Interesting note: The final particle can be *ʔəŋ* or *teʔ*. According to my LRP if either of these are left out then the sentence does not sound finished. So it could either be a sentence final particle or it could be an anaphoric reference to the house that will be built again. We would then translate this as “This big house that burnt down, it will be built again.” I prefer this explanation as *teʔ* is always a subject anaphor everywhere else so probably is here too.

<sup>18</sup> Lawa numerals are provided in section (4.8) and Lawa classifiers are listed in section (4.9).

The number phrase is able to move out of the NP. However, only number phrases of NP<sub>OBJ</sub> can be moved out of the NP to a clause final position. It is ungrammatical to move a number phrase from the subject position or oblique position.

Example (98) proves that it is possible to move the number phrase of the object to the end of the clause.

(98)

*ka?ewh bun k<sup>h</sup>ian cotmaj <sup>n</sup>dɔj la? ma? ti? p<sup>h</sup>ian*  
 yesterday Boon write **letter** send to mother **one CLF.letter**  
 Yesterday Boon wrote a letter to send to his mother

In example (99), the number phrase *ti? p<sup>h</sup>ian* is moved out from the NP<sub>OBJ</sub> *pap* ‘book’ and appears after the recipient constituent. In this sentence, it is possible for the number phrase to move to the final position of the clause too.

(99)

*?aj? kiah pap la? bun ti? p<sup>h</sup>ian la? pia? t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
 1SG give **book** to Boon **one CLF.letter** for father 3SG  
 I gave a book to Boon for his father

Examples (100), (101), (102) and (103) demonstrate sentences with three number phrases in subject, object and oblique positions. In (100) the number phrases attach and come directly next to each noun phrases.

(100)

*k<sup>h</sup>u ti? puj kiah sɔ? la?a tua*  
 teacher one CLF.human give **dog two CLF.nonhuman**

*la? kuin ?amaj la?ɔj puj ka?ewh*  
 to child male three CLF.human yesterday  
 A teacher gave two dogs to three boys yesterday

Example (101) has the number phrase of the NP<sub>OBJ</sub> moved out and it appears at the end of the clause, after the adverb (yesterday).



(101)

*k<sup>h</sup>u ti? puj kiah sɔ? la? kuin ?amaj*  
teacher one CLF.human give **dog** APPL child male

*la?ɔj puj ka?ewh la?a tua*  
three CLF.human yesterday **two** **CLF.nonhuman**

A teacher gave two dogs to three boys yesterday

Example (102) proves that moving the number phrase out of the NP<sub>SUB</sub> is ungrammatical.

(102)\*

*k<sup>h</sup>u kiah sɔ? la?a tua la? kuin ?amaj*  
**teacher** give dog two CLF.nonhuman APPL child male

*la?ɔj puj ka?ewh ti? puj*  
three CLF.human yesterday **one** **CLF.human**

Intended: A teacher gave two dogs to three boys yesterday

Example (103) shows that the number phrase in the oblique position cannot be moved out of the NP.

(103)\*

*k<sup>h</sup>u ti? puj kiah ?ape? paiŋ plah*  
teacher one CLF.human give shirt four CLF.cloth

*la? nak<sup>h</sup>rian ka?ewh la?a puj*  
APPL **student** yesterday **two** **CLF**

Intended: A teacher gave four shirts to two students yesterday

Numbers in Eastern Lawa come after the noun and can optionally co-occur with a classifier. The number phrase is movable, but, only number phrases of NP objects can be moved out of the noun phrase to a clause final position. It is ungrammatical to move a number phrase from the subject NP or oblique NP.

### 5.6.1 Indefinite reference

Dryer (2007:155-6) states that “Just as many languages use demonstratives where English would use a definite article, it is similarly the case that many languages use the numeral for ‘one’ in contexts where English would use an indefinite article.”

Eastern Lawa fits this description perfectly and uses the numeral ‘one’ for indefinite reference and demonstratives for definite reference. In example (104) the number *ti?* ‘one’ is used before the noun to give an indefinite meaning ‘someone’. If the person was known or referred to previously, the demonstrative *t<sup>h</sup>ɔ* would be used after *puj* ‘person’.

(104)

*kaj ti? puj ʔaik him ʔawia t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
have.is one person at close door DEM  
There is a person at the door / Someone is at the door.

### 5.7 Relative clauses

A relative clause can function as a modifier of a noun and if so it will follow the head noun in the noun phrase. A relative clause is introduced by an optional relativizer *pi?*<sup>19</sup>. The schema for a noun phrase that consists of a relative clause as a modifier is as follows.

NP: [N<sub>HEAD</sub> (*pi?*) S<sub>REL</sub>]

Examples (105) and (106) show noun phrases with modifiers that are relative clauses. The relative clause comes directly after the head noun in (105). If there is an adjective modifier in a noun phrase with a relative clause modifier, the adjective goes directly after the head noun preceding the relative clause as in example (106).

(105)

*ka<sup>n</sup>ɔw? pi? pian lɔk t<sup>h</sup>ɔ | jum ka?ewh*  
child who catch disease that | die yesterday  
The child who caught that disease died yesterday.

---

<sup>19</sup> The internal structure of relative clauses is discussed in more detail in section (9.3.3).

(106)

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>ɔw?</i>	<i>tia?</i>	<b><i>pi?</i></b>	<i>pian</i>	<i>lɔk</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>		<i>jum</i>	<i>ka<sup>?</sup>ewh</i>
child	small	<b>who</b>	catch	disease	that		die	yesterday

The small child who caught that disease died yesterday.

Example (107) shows that the relative clause needs to come after the adjective phrase and is ungrammatical if it comes before.

(107)\*

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>ɔw?</i>	<b><i>pi?</i></b>	<i>pian</i>	<i>lɔk</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>tia?</i>		<i>jum</i>	<i>ka<sup>?</sup>ewh</i>
child	<b>who</b>	catch	disease	that	small		die	yesterday

Intended: The small child who caught that disease died yesterday.

## 5.8 Prepositional phrase modifiers

A prepositional phrase can modify a noun inside the noun phrase. The schema for this kind of noun phrase is as below.

NP: [N<sub>HEAD</sub> PP]

In sentence (108) a prepositional phrase appears in the subject noun phrase and modifies the noun *ka<sup>n</sup>ɔw?* ‘child’.

(108)

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>ɔw?</i>	<i>kanaj</i>	<i>jia?</i>	<i>ja?</i>	<i>ma?</i>		<i>laha?</i>	<i>miah pote?</i>
child(ren)	inside	house	POSS	2SG		play	together

Children in your house are playing together

In example (109) the preposition *nij* ‘in’ is in the subject noun phrase.

(109)

<i>fia?</i>	<i>nij</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>ɔ?</i>		<i>kamlaj</i>	<i>kok</i>	<i>ʔamɔih</i>
monkey	in	tree		PROG	eat	banana

The monkey in the tree is eating a banana

Example (110) has the preposition *newm* ‘from’ and fits the pattern.

(110)

*ka<sup>n</sup>dow?* *newm* *nia?* *ja?* *ʔaj* *hew* *hoŋhian*  
 child from house POSS 1SG go school  
 The child from my house went to school

## 5.9 Possessive noun phrases

Another type of noun phrase is a possessive noun phrase. Eastern Lawa possessive noun phrases consist of a possessee which is the head of the phrase, a possessor and an optional possessive marker *ja?*<sup>20</sup>. The structure of possessive noun phrases is as follows.

NP: [N(NP<sub>POSS</sub>) ---]

NP<sub>POSS</sub>: [(ja?) N---]

As shown in the above schema, the possessee precedes the possessor. Nouns, pronouns and other nominalized heads are allowed in possessee position and nouns and pronouns are allowed in possessor position.

Example (111) shows a possessive noun phrase which consists of *nia?* ‘house’ as the possessee which is possessed by *bun* ‘Boon’.

(111)

*nia?* (ja?) *bun*  
 house of Boon  
 Boon's house.

Examples (112), (113) and (114) show that *ja?* is not allowed for ‘kinship’ and ‘part-whole’ relationships.

(112)\* Kinship

*pia?* \*(ja?) *bun*  
 father of Boon  
 Boon's father.

<sup>20</sup> This pronunciation of the possessive marker *ja?* is influenced by the preceding sounds. It can appear as *ja?* or *na?* or *ʔija?* depending on the preceding consonants.

(113)\* Part-whole  
*cuaŋ \*(ja?) ʔaj*  
 leg of 1SG  
 My foot.

(114)\* Part-whole  
*cuaŋ \*(ja?) taŋi:*  
 leg of chair  
 Leg of the chair

In example (115) the possessive *ja?* is obligatory and the same in (116).

(115)  
*k<sup>h</sup>ɔk<sup>h</sup>wan ja? naŋsi*  
 message of book  
 the book's message

(116)  
*sɔʔ ja? ʔaj*  
 dog of my  
 My dog

## 5.10 Coordinate noun phrases

In Eastern Lawa, the conjunction *miah* connects words, phrases, and clauses. The structure for coordinate nouns / noun phrases is as follows.

NP<sub>COORDINATE</sub>: [N(P) *miah* N(P)]

In (117) *miah* conjoins two nouns and forms a coordinate noun phrase.<sup>21</sup>

(117)  

<i>hew</i>	<i><sup>n</sup>dua</i>	<i>pɛ</i>	<i>miah</i>	<i>laʔqwm</i>	<i>la?</i>	<i>piɑ?</i>	<i>te?</i>
go	take	mango	and	water	to	father	yours

 Go take **mango and water** to your father.

<sup>21</sup> See also section 3.4.3 for use of *miah* with accompaniment.

## 5.11 Quantifiers

Quantifiers follow the noun that they modify and add information about the quantity of the noun. Quantifiers were listed in section 4.10.

The schema for a simple noun phrase with a quantifier is as follows:

NP: [N<sub>HEAD</sub> QUANT]

Example (118) shows the head noun being modified by a quantifier.

(118)

<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>həʔŋ</i>	<i>kaj</i>	<i>tiap</i>
<b>dog</b>	<b>many</b>	have	fleas

Many dogs have fleas

Example (119) shows that the quantifier *kʰrəŋ* ‘every’ appears in a number phrase.

(119)

<i>hew</i>	<i>kaʔhɔ</i>	<i>nian</i>	<i>kʰrəŋ</i>	<i>saʔŋaiʔ</i>
go	there	look	<b>every</b>	CLF.day

(He) went there to look everyday.

In example (120) the quantifier *həʔŋ* ‘many’ occurs following a verb.

(120) BL14

<i>kok</i>	<i>həʔŋ</i>	<i>həʔŋ</i>	<i>ʔo</i>	<i>ʔe</i>	<i>ŋain</i>
eat	<b>much</b>	<b>much</b>	INTERJ	chicken	male

Eats much too much, oh, the father chicken

Changing the order of the classifier sometimes changes the meaning. In example (121) the order of the phrase is [Num Quant Clf] with the meaning ‘half a day’ and in (122), the order changes to [Num Clf Quant] and the meaning becomes ‘one and a half days’.

(121)

<i>tiʔ</i>	<i>ka<sup>m</sup>brah</i>	<i>saʔŋaiʔ</i>
one	<b>half</b>	CLF.day

Half a day.

(122)

*ti? sa?ŋai? ka<sup>m</sup>brah*  
one CLF.day **half**  
One and an half days.

## 5.12 Summary

This chapter presented the constituent order and internal structure of Eastern Lawa noun phrases.

Partial noun phrase schema:

NP: [N (ADJP)(RELCL)(QUANT)(POSS)(NUMP){(DEM)(PP)}]

It discussed some of the modifiers that appear in noun phrases and some of the different types of noun phrases. Of note are the demonstratives that can move more than other constituents and number phrases which can move out of object noun phrases to the end of the clause.

## Chapter 6

### Verb phrases

#### 6.1 Introduction

This section discusses elements that occur in verb phrases. Firstly the positions of verb phrase elements are presented. In 6.2 verb heads which can be either single verbs or verb chains are investigated and various semantic relationships encoded by serial verbs are investigated. Section 6.3 discusses negation. Section 6.4 investigates directionals. Section 6.5 discusses tense, aspect and modality, and finally section 6.6 presents adverb positions in relation to the verb.

Partial Verb phrase schema:

VP: [(NEG)(ti?)(TAM)(ADV) V (V<sub>DIRECTION</sub>)(ADV)(TAM)(NEG)]

The following position chart shows the position of negation, tense, aspect, modals, and the main verbs within a verb phrase. This table is not exhaustive but indicative of many VPs.

**Table 40 Verb phrase position chart(s)<sup>22</sup>**

Negation		Preverb			Head
NEG	yet	TAM1	TAM2	Adverbial phrase	Verb(s)
<i>ʔu:</i>	<i>ti?</i>	<i>ʔi:</i> - PAST	<i>hoit</i> - completive	<i>klaic</i> - fast	verb
<i>pu:</i>		<i>ca?</i> - possible	<i>sam</i> - FUT <i>sam</i> - imperfective	<i>kuε</i> - slow <i>ʔan</i> - quickly	serial verbs V <sub>ADJ</sub>

Postverb			Negation	
Direction	Adverbial phrase		NEG	
V <sub>DIRECTION</sub>	<i>klaic</i> - fast <i>kuε</i> - slow <i>k<sup>h</sup>rɔʔ</i> - again	<i>luan</i> - very	<i>ʔday</i> - durative <i>ɓwh</i> - experienced/PAST	<i>tew</i>

<sup>22</sup> Unfortunately these can't fit across the page in one table so need to be split into two tables.



## 6.2 Verb heads

Eastern Lawa has both single verbs and serial verbs as heads in a verb phrase. See also section 3.3 on word order.

### 6.2.1 Single verbs

Single verbs in Eastern Lawa either follow or precede the subject noun phrase (which is often dropped). Example (123) shows a single verb in a sentence with the subject occurring before the verb.

- (123) ET.12b  
*puj hɔit nian pa?*  
people finished look him  
The people stopped looking at him.

Example (124) shows a single verb in a sentence with the subject occurring after the verb.

- (124) ET.46  
*kok ʔaj samɔŋ jum luan*  
eat 1SG brain tasty very  
I'm eating its brain - very tasty.

### 6.2.2 Serial verbs

Serial verb constructions are frequent in Eastern Lawa. A verb chain marker *pi?* is optionally used to connect verbs in a serial verbs chain. When *pi?* connects two or more verbs in a serial verb chain, all the verbs share the same subject. However, there are some serial verb constructions where *pi?* is omitted even though verbs share the same subject. Also *pi?* is not permitted in imperative clauses. The structure of serial verbs is schematized in (125).

- (125) **Serial verb construction**  
(a) V (*pi?*) V  
(b) V V

There is no limitation on how many verbs are permitted in verb serialization within a single clause. Example (126) has four verbs without any verb chain markers.

(126) LC.103

*ka tʰɔ paʔ kuat kok kuat sɔwm tew lah*  
during you want eat want eat.rice not eh  
During (that time) you don't want to eat rice eat anything eh.

Various semantic relationships are conveyed using serial verbs, including simultaneous motion, sequential motion, motion with goal and motion with reached goal. The following section illustrates how these are syntactically realized using serial verb constructions.

### 6.2.2.1 Simultaneous motion

In simultaneous motion serial verb constructions, events happen at the same time or close to the same time. Example (127) demonstrates a serial verb construction denoting simultaneous motion. The action of 'holding' and 'running' occur at the same time.

(127) BDF.4a

*ʰbain piʔ tɔ sawiŋ teʔ*  
**hold v.chain run** net his  
Holding his net and running.

### 6.2.2.2 Sequential motion

Sequential motion is expressed with the verb *hew* 'go' plus another action verb. The two verbs in the verb phrase share the same subject. In example (128) the people 'run to go see'. Sequentially the seeing comes after the running.

(128) ET.10

*puj tɔ piʔ hew nian tuk soʔ teʔ*  
people **ran v.chain go look** all.of.them  
People ran to see - all of them.

### 6.2.2.3 Motion with goal

Another type of serial verb construction is motion with goal as in the second half of example (129). This is expressed with the verb *hew* 'go' and a verb denoting an activity at the end of the motion.

(129) LC.18

*nat kiah ?aj hew truat te? niŋ hət*  
appointment give me go check PRO.SUBJ at Hot  
An appointment was given to me to go check-up at Hot

#### 6.2.2.4 Motion with reached goal

Motion with reached goal verb serialization is exemplified with the motion verb *hew* ‘go’ and *p<sup>h</sup>ət* ‘arrive’ followed by the goal in a prepositional phase. In (130) *p<sup>h</sup>ət* ‘arrive’ indicates the reached goal.

(130) BDF.1c

*hew phət niŋ tuŋ ti? təhw kanai p<sup>h</sup>ε?*  
go arrive at pond one place inside forest  
(he) came to a pond at a place in the forest

### 6.3 Negation

There are three negative operators in Eastern Lawa. *?u* and *tew* are used for declarative sentences, and *pu:* is used for imperative sentences. Their positions in relation to the main verb are shown in Table 40 above. The negators can both occur with stative and eventive predicates.

#### 6.3.1 Post verbal negation using *tew*

The negative operator *tew* comes after the verb in the clause. The following schema describes Eastern Lawa negation using *tew*.

S<sub>NEG</sub>: [--- V *tew* ]

One of the most basic uses of the negative operator is when someone says “no” as in example (131).

(131) LC.248

*mah tew*  
be not  
No

Example (132) has an event (sucking) being negated.

- (132) LC.231  
*mɔʔ tew maʔ teʔ*  
suck not mother PRO.SUBJ  
His mother didn't suckle (him).

In example (133) *tew* is negating more than one verb. 'Not want to eat, not want to eat rice' (not want to eat anything). This is likely an elaborate expression.

- (133) LC.103  
*ka tʰɔ paʔ kuat kok kuat sɔwm tew lah*  
during you want eat want eat.rice not eh  
During (morning sickness) you didn't want to eat rice or anything eh.

Examples (134) and (135) show negation of a stative predicate (ripe) using *tew*.

- (134)  
*pleʔ kʰɔʔ hej tiʔ tum tew*  
fruit tree this yet ripe NEG  
This fruit is not yet ripe. (Implies that it is close)

- (135)  
*pleʔ kʰɔʔ hej tum tew*  
fruit tree this ripe NEG  
This fruit is not ripe. (implies its not close and there might not even be fruit on the tree)

### 6.3.2 Preverbal negation using *ʔu:*

The negative operator *ʔu:* comes before the verb. *ʔu:* can have other constituents occurring between it and the verb. *ʔu:* also operates on both stative and eventive predicates. The following schema describes negation using *ʔu:*.

S<sub>NEG</sub>: [*ʔu:* (*caʔ*) (PRO) (ADV) V --- ]

Examples (136) and (137) show examples of the negator *ʔu:*.

(136) LC.146

*ʔu:* caʔ      tian laʔawm neŋ      ʔaj ʔɔʔ  
**not** possible able water breast my eh  
 My breast milk wasn't enough eh

(137) LC.195

*tʰamjan viaŋ      ʔu:* caʔ      ʔatia ʔme kʰaŋ kʰaj teʔ  
 work Chiang Mai **not** possible return again after.that PRO.SUBJ  
 (He) worked in Chiang Mai but he didn't return again after that

In example (138) *ʔu:* is being used with a stative predicate (big). It also has an adverb (not yet) between the negator and the verb.

(138) LC.165

*ʔu:* ti ri lah      ʔu: ti ri kapɔʔ  
**not** yet big eh      **not** yet big stomach  
 (She) isn't big yet eh – (her) stomach isn't big yet

Example (139) has the 2SG pronoun 'you' and the adverb *tiʔ* 'not yet' between the negator and the verb

(139) LC.67b

*tɛ mah ʔu:* paʔ ti sokia viak lah  
 but be **not** you yet pain stomach eh  
 But you weren't having labour pains yet eh

### 6.3.2.1 Differences between *tew* and *ʔu:*.

The negative operators *tew* and *ʔu:* are used to express different types of negation. The following examples are a direct comparison between these two negators. In example (140) the verb *ʔia* 'want' is negated with *tew*.

(140)

*ca?*        *ʔia*    **tew**    *kaj*    *ʔdáj*  
possible    want    **NEG**    have    already  
(I) don't want (it) – (I) have already

In example (141) the verb *ʔia* 'want' is negated with *ʔu:* which adds the semantic content of not wanting something at all.

(141)

**ʔu:**        *ca?*        *ʔia*    *kaj*    *ʔdáj*  
**NEG**    possible    want    have    already  
(I) don't want (it) **at all** – (I) have already

To summarize, *ʔu:* and *tew* are used for negation in declarative clauses. More research is required to ascertain the exact domains or conditions that require the use of one versus the other, but *ʔu:* looks to be a more emphatic negation and *tew* looks like it negates intention if an agent is present.

### 6.3.3 Imperative negation using *pu:*

Negatives in imperative sentences use the negative operator *pu:*<sup>23</sup>, with an optional *ca?* 'possible'. The subject is not expressed in negative imperative clauses. The simple schema for negative imperative constructions in Eastern Lawa clauses is as below<sup>24</sup>.

$S_{\text{NEG.IMPR}}: [pu: (ca?) V \text{ --- } ]$

In example (142), the negative imperative *pu:* appears at the clause initial position and precedes the verb.

(142)

**pu:**                *ca?*                *mbia*    *hew*    *pasəŋ*    *səʔej*  
**NEG.IMPER**    **possible**    forget    go    Pa Sang    tomorrow  
Don't forget to go to PaSang tomorrow!

<sup>23</sup> I suspect *pu:* is a combination of *pa?* – 2SG and *ʔu* – NEG.

<sup>24</sup> Imperative sentences are discussed in more detail in section 8.4

Example (143) has both *ʔu:* and *pu:* for negation. The conditional subordinate clause uses *ʔu:* and the imperative uses *pu:*.

(143)

*pin ʔu: pa? keh juh pu: ca? juh*  
 If NEG 2SG able do NEG possible do  
 If he is not able (he) shouldn't do it

## 6.4 Directionals

Lawa has many directionals as it uses other verbs to encode direction often with prepositions. For example – *hew* which usually means ‘to go’, when used in a directional sense with another verb means ‘away’. Other examples include verbs that have inherent directional properties like *liak* ‘enter’, *huak* ‘go up’ and *leih* ‘go down’. The position of directionals in a verb phrase is schematized as below. Note that there can be more than one of the additional elements that are used together to encode direction

$VP_{\text{DIRECTIONAL}}: [V_{\text{MAIN}} V_{\text{DIRECTION}} (PP)]$

Example (144) shows the use of the verb *hew* ‘go’ as a directional with a manner of motion verb like *tɔ* ‘run’ to denote motion in a direction away from the speaker.

(144)

*mu tʰɔ tɔ hew pʰa? ʔaj?*  
 3PL run away from 1SG  
 They ran away from me.

Interesting to note that in example (144) the party fleeing and the speaker don't necessarily start in the same place, whereas in (145) they started in the same place.

(145)

*mu tʰɔ tɔ ʔɔk pʰa? ʔaj?*  
 3PL run out from 1SG  
 They ran out from me.

Example (146) has *hew* ‘go’ as the main verb together with the verb *liak* ‘enter’ as the directionals.

(146) LC.169

*hew liak to? k<sup>h</sup>um <sup>?</sup>dejn puj la?ej*  
 go enter into spa long person today  
 (She) went into the spa (for a) long time today

## 6.5 Tense aspect mood

Eastern Lawa does not mark tense inflectionally; however, TAM markers indicate the tense, aspect and/or modality of the situation. See section 4.11 for TAM markers.

Table 41 demonstrates the interactions between aspect particles and five different types of events and states: *luan* ‘tall’, *pewp* ‘broken’, *viak* ‘to break’, *to* ‘to run’, and *lom* ‘sharp’.

**Table 41 Tense / Aspect markers with different types of events and states**

TAM	Eventuality				
	<i>lom</i> ‘sharp’	<i>luan</i> ‘tall’	<i>pewp</i> ‘broken’	<i>viak</i> ‘to break’	<i>to</i> ‘run’
<i>hoit</i>	finished being sharp (it isn’t now)	X	broken already	finished breaking (it’s broken)	finished running
<i>?i:</i>	sharp already	tall now (already)	certainly broken or just broken	broken already (but not sure if it is now)	ran already (but not sure if still running)
<i>sam</i>	becoming sharp	becoming tall	close to breaking	will break it or in the process of breaking it	will run
<i><sup>?</sup>daŋ</i>	still sharp	still tall	still broken	breaking it now	ran already (don’t know if running now)

Table 41 has a wealth of useful information and will be used in the following comparisons between the different tense and aspect markers. It could also be useful for future research into tense and aspect.



### 6.5.1 Aspect *hɔit*

In Eastern Lawa, the perfective aspect is expressed by *hɔit*. It can be used for both events and states. Example (147) shows *hɔit* being used with an event.

- (147) R.37  
wat      *hɔit*      sɔm pa      pote?      ʔɔk      laha?      niŋ      m<sup>h</sup>brɔk  
when      **COMPL**      eat      take      together      out      play      in      yard  
When (they) finished eating, (they) went out together to play in the yard.

Example (148) shows *hɔit* being used with a state (from Table 41).

- (148)  
mi:t      hej      *hɔit*      lɔm  
knife      this      **COMPL**      sharp  
The knife is finished (being) sharp (it isn't sharp now).

### 6.5.2 Aspect <sup>2</sup>*daŋ*

The durative aspect is expressed by <sup>2</sup>*daŋ* which occurs only in positive declarative sentences. <sup>2</sup>*daŋ* is incompatible with *hɔit*. It can be used for both events and states. Example (149) shows <sup>2</sup>*daŋ* being used with an event.

- (149) LC.94  
leih      cumtɔŋ      saŋej      t<sup>h</sup>ɔ      kuaŋ hua      <sup>2</sup>*daŋ*      te?  
go.down      ChomThong      day      that      feel.sick      **DUR**      PRO.SUBJ  
The day (I) went down to Chom Thong, I still felt sick.

Example (150) shows <sup>2</sup>*daŋ* being used with a state (from Table 41).

- (150)  
mi:t      hej      lɔm      <sup>2</sup>*daŋ*  
knife      this      sharp      **DUR**  
The knife is still sharp.

### 6.5.3 Tense *ʔi:*

The tense marker *ʔi:* expresses that the action or state happened before the speech time. It can be used for both events and states. Example (151) is typical of *ʔi:*.

- (151) R.43  
*ʔi:*        *lawəj wat huak niŋ kaʔduəŋ*  
**already** dusk when climb place on top  
(It was) already dusk when (they) climbed up on top.

*ʔi:* often co-occurs with the completive aspect marker *hɔit* as in example (152)

- (152). LC.174  
*ʔi:*        *hɔit laʔŋj cuəŋ newm ləʔaj saʔ*  
**already** finished three times since today early  
(She's) already finished three times since early today.

Example (153) shows *ʔi:* being used with a state (from Table 41).

- (153)  
*mi:t hej ʔi: lɔm*  
knife this **already** sharp  
The knife is already sharp.

Note the different between *ʔi:* and *hɔit*. *ʔi:* is past tense whereas *hɔit* is perfective aspect. This is clear when comparing examples (148) where the knife has finished being sharp and (153) where the knife is already sharp.

### 6.5.4 Tense/aspect *sam*

Like Hebrew, Eastern Lawa uses *sam* for both imperfective aspect and future tense. Example (154) demonstrates its use to denote the future tense.

- (154) R15  
*ləj lɔŋ kit sam pət*  
then try think FUT open  
then (he) thought “will it open?”

Example (155) demonstrates *sam* being used to encode imperfective aspect.

(155) LC.95  
*mah sam keh pa? ??*  
 be **PROG** pregnant you eh  
 Yes during your pregnancy eh?

Example (156) shows *sam* being used with a state (from Table 41).

(156)  
*mi:t hej sam lom*  
 knife this PROG/FUT sharp  
 This knife is getting sharp /  
 The knife will be sharp.

### 6.5.5 Diagrams of aspect / tense

Figure 4 summarizes the meaning of four tense/aspect markers visually with the state of being sharp - *lom*.

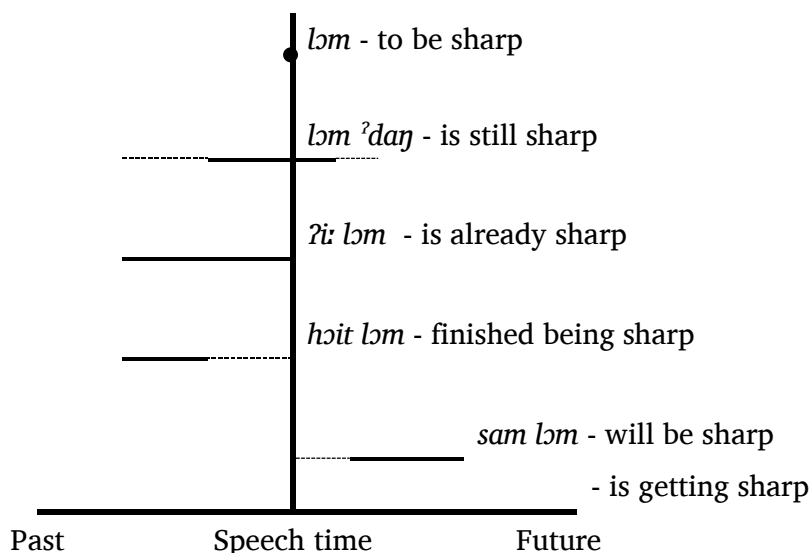


Figure 4 The meaning of *lom* 'sharp' with TAM markers in relation to time

Figure 5 summarizes the meaning of four tense/aspect markers visually with the action of running - *tɔ*.

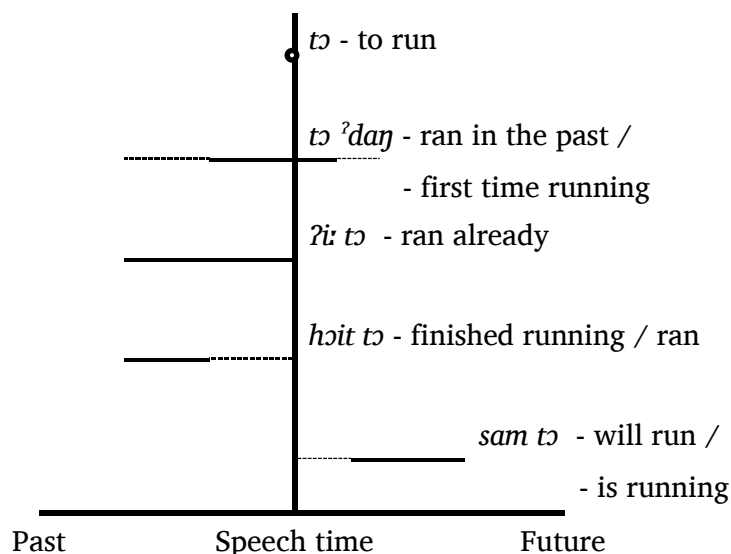


Figure 5 The meaning of *tɔ* 'run' with TAM markers in relation to time

### 6.5.6 Modality/mood

A few of the Eastern Lawa mood markers are presented in Table 42. The second column provides the gloss and the third column summarizes definitions for each particle.

Table 42 Modality

Modality	Gloss	Partial Definition	Position
<i>te</i>	CNT.EXP	Counter-expectational	Post verbal
<i>hɔ?</i>	HORT	The eventuality expressed should be done by the addressee	Post verbal - before object NP

The particle *hɔ?* occurs after the verb phrase of imperative clauses and expresses that the speaker is encouraging someone to do the action.

Example (157) illustrates *hɔʔ*, a mild hortative, coming after the verb but before the NP subject.

- (157) LC.228  
*kit hɔʔ paj*  
think HORT you  
You should think about that!

In example (158), *tə* indicates surprise or counter-expectation.

- (158) LC.49  
*ʔoh saʔeh huak ʔmɛ pa laʔ mɔ tə*  
oh tomorrow go.up again you to doctor really  
Oh really! Are you going up to the doctor again tomorrow?

## 6.6 Adverbs

Adverbs are not arguments in a clause and they can occur in different positions depending on their function in the clause. For example temporal adverbs usually appear either sentence initial or final. Adverbs are dealt with in more detail in sections 4.6 and 9.3, so this section will only explore the position of adverbs in relation to the verb.

Manner adverbs come before the verb they modify as in example (159).

- (159)  
*klaic hew keʔ laʔ hoŋhian*  
fast go 3SG to school  
He walked quickly to school.

Degree adverbs modify (verbal) adjectives in attributive constructions or other adverbs and appear after the adjective or adverb as in example (160) below.

(160)

*puj tʰɔ luɑŋ luan*  
person DEM tall very  
He is very tall.

## 6.7 Summary

This section presented various Eastern Lawa verb phrase constituents including serial verb construction, negation, directionals, tense aspect and modality and adverbs. Firstly the positions of verb phrase elements were presented.

VP: [(NEG)(ti?)(TAM)(ADV) V (V<sub>DIRECTION</sub>)(ADV)(TAM)(NEG)]

Verb heads were shown to be either single verbs or serial verbs with the optional verb chain element *pi?*. Negation was presented next, which can be either pre-verbal or post-verbal. Next verbal directionals were presented which occur after the head verb and encode extra directional information. Then tense, aspect and modality elements were presented which can be either pre-verbal or post-verbal. Finally adverb positions were discussed in relation to the verb.

## Chapter 7

### Voice and valence changing

#### 7.1 Introduction

This chapter presents valence alternations and voice changes in Eastern Lawa. It discusses how argument structure changes through passive, causative, and applicative constructions. First, it discusses typical valence-decreasing constructions such as passives in section (7.2). Adversative passives, where no agent is required, are examined first. Next passives where the patient is forced to do something are examined. Then non-referential passives are investigated where an undefined “agent” is used and finally zero agent passives in the form of resultative constructions are examined. Most of these “passives” do not strictly result in fewer arguments as might be expected say for English, but semantic changes like the English passive do occur and are worth investigating. Secondly, this chapter discusses reflexives and reciprocals in (7.3). Next valence-increasing constructions such as causatives in (7.4), and applicatives in (7.5) are investigated.

#### 7.2 Passives

O’Grady (2001), defines passive voice as, “Passive voice is a grammatical voice common in many of the world’s languages. In a clause with passive voice, the grammatical subject expresses the theme or patient of the main verb – that is, the person or thing that undergoes the action or has its state changed. This contrasts with active voice, in which the subject has the agent role.”

Eastern Lawa has various forms of passive and passive like constructions: adversative passives, passive constructions with *kla:*, passive constructions that use *pui* as a dummy subject and zero passives.

##### 7.2.1 Adversative passives

Kroger describes adversatives as a special type of passive construction (Kroger 2005: 279). Eastern Lawa has an adversative passive construction using *lɔk*. In this kind of sentence, the patient is the subject of the clause, and the ‘patient’ suffers the effect of

an action. There is a special emphasis on the affectedness of the patient, and the effect is almost always negative. The adversative passive construction is schematized as below.

$S_{\text{PASSIVE.ADVERSATIVE}}: [[\text{NP}_{-i \text{ SUB.PATIENT}} \text{ } l\acute{o}k \text{ } [V \text{ } (\text{NP}_{\text{AGENT}}) \text{ } \text{---} \text{ } (X_i)]_S]$

Examples (161) and (162) illustrate adversative passive constructions. In example (161) no agent is expressed

(161)

*pɛ: tʰɔ lək kok*  
 mango DEM ADVERS eat  
 The mango was eaten.

In example (162), the speaker suffers the result of a beating. The agent is expressed using a non specific subject in an oblique prepositional phrase *ta? puʝ ʔu: maic*.

(162)

*ʔaj lək mbein ta? puʝ ʔu: maic*  
 1SG ADVERS beat by person NEG good  
 I was beaten by a bad person/people.

### 7.2.2 *kla:* passive like constructions

Eastern Lawa has another passive like construction that is formed by using the verb *kla:* ‘forced.to’. The expressed subject (patient) does not have volitional freedom and suffers the action of the verb. The passive construction with *kla:* is schematized as below.

$S_{\text{PASSIVE}}: [kla: \text{NP}_{\text{SUB.PATIENT}} \text{ } V \text{ } \text{---}]$

In example (163), the patient *puʝ* ‘he’ is in the subject position but is forced to do something non volitional.

(163)

*kla: puʝ ʔəŋ ʔɔk pʰa? (ʔəŋ) ŋan*  
 forced.to 3SG DEM out from his work  
 He was fired.  
 Lit: forced he was to leave from his work.



### 7.2.3 *puj* - non-referential passive like constructions

Another passive-like construction uses *puj* ‘people’ as a non-referential subject. Non-referential subjects are formed using *puj* without a demonstrative. Therefore the gloss ‘person’ could just as easily be translated ‘someone’.

For instance, in a sentence like (164) *puj* appears as a non-referential subject and refers to non-specific people. This sentence seems syntactically more like an active voice, as there is a syntactic subject who has built a house, but the clause is semantically passive due to the non-referential subject.

(164)

*ʔi:        hɔit        poh    puj        ɲiaʔ    niŋ    kaʔrej*  
 finished COMPL build person house LOC here

The house has been built here.

Lit: Finished building someone did the house here.

### 7.2.4 Zero agent resultative

Zero agent resultative constructions focus on the result of the event. The agent of the event is not expressed as an argument. Lawa has some different ‘cause’ and ‘result’ forms for some action verbs as in Table 43 but there are other verbs that can be used as either cause or result. The verbs listed in the first column take two arguments: agent as a subject and a patient as an object. They are more agentive. The verbs listed in the second column take only one argument; the patient as a subject. If the agent is expressed, it is as an oblique.

**Table 43 Lexical causatives and resultatives**

Cause	Result
<i>wiak</i> ‘to break’	<i>bewp</i> ‘broken’
<i>p<sup>h</sup>luj</i> ‘to burn’	<i>haʔ</i> ‘burnt’
<i>p<sup>h</sup>raʔ</i> ‘to frighten’	<i>lat</i> ‘frightened’

The schematic construction for zero agent passives that indicate the result of an event is as below.

S<sub>PASSIVE.RESULT</sub>: [NP<sub>SUB.PATIENT</sub> V<sub>RESULT</sub> (NP<sub>OBL.AGENT</sub>)]

Example (165) is a causative construction and example (166) is a resultative construction. Note example (166) has no agent (passive construction) whereas example (165) does (active construction).

(165)

*kaʔndɔwʔ tʰɔ wiak kak kʰɔʔ*  
 child DEM break branch tree  
 The child broke the branch.

(166)

*kak kʰɔʔ bewp*  
 branch tree broken  
 The branch (is) broken.

If the agent is to be stated it appears in an oblique NP as in example (167).

(167)

*kak kʰɔʔ bewp taʔ kaʔndɔwʔ tʰɔ*  
 branch tree broken by child DEM  
 The branch was broken by the child

### 7.3 Reflexives and reciprocals

Reflexives are used to denote doing something to or for oneself. Reciprocals are used to denote people doing something to or for each other. *teʔ* is used in both reciprocal and reflexive clauses to refer to the subject.

Example (168) is a simple reflexive sentence with the subject accidentally hitting himself.

(168)

*kʰɔʔ mbein teʔ*  
**accidentally** hit PRO.SUBJ  
 (He) accidentally hit himself

### 7.3.1 Reflexive emphatics

In Eastern Lawa *ʔnɔŋ* is used to express doing something alone and *poʔ* is used to express doing something with others.

*ʔnɔŋ teʔ* - to/for oneself

*poʔ teʔ* - to/with each other

In example (169) *ʔnɔŋ* and *teʔ* are used to express that the subject ate alone. If *ʔnɔŋ* was taken out, the subject would then be referring to themselves eating, but we would be (fairly) sure that they ate with others.

(169)

*ʔaj sɔm ʔnɔŋ teʔ*  
I eat.rice **do.alone** PRO.SUBJ  
I ate by myself.

In example (170) the subject *puj tʰɔ* ‘he’ is the one who feeds himself. This conveys the meaning that he is young and only just able to do this by himself.

(170)

*puj tʰɔ sɔm ʔnɔŋ ʔiah*  
3SG eat.rice **do.alone** **able**  
He was able to eat by himself.

The word *ʔnɔŋ* semantically includes meanings like - seperately, oneself, not relying on others, alone. In example (171), *puj tʰɔ* ‘he’ dressed himself without getting any help from others. The object noun phrase ‘clothes’ comes between *ʔnɔŋ* and *teʔ*.

(171)

*puj tʰɔ ʔiah<sup>25</sup> ʔnɔŋ kʰua teʔ*  
3SG put.on do.alone clothes PRO.SUBJ  
He put on his clothes alone

---

<sup>25</sup> Here we have *ʔiah* –turning up before *ʔnɔŋ*, but it doesn’t have the meaning ‘only just able’. It means ‘to put on (clothes)’. A change in position denotes a change of meaning.

### 7.3.2 Reciprocals

The reciprocal relationship is expressed using the reciprocal *po?* with the reflexive *te?*.

In example (172), the three (boy, dog and frog), become friends together – expressed with the reciprocal *po?* and the reflexive *te?*.

- (172) BDF.27  
*la?j pen piŋew po? te?*  
three is.are (TH) friends **RECIP** **PRO.SUBJ**  
All three were friends together

### 7.4 Causatives

Causatives indicate that a subject causes someone or something else to do or be something, or causes a change in state of a non-volitional event.

Causatives are formed using the causative verbs *k<sup>he</sup>* ‘force’, *kiah?* ‘cause’ or *co?* ‘command’. They add a new participant in a clause (Kroger 2005:277). The schematic construction for causatives is as below.

$S_{\text{CAUSATIVE}}: [\text{NP}_{\text{CAUSER}} \text{V}_{\text{CAUSATIVE}} \text{S}]$

The relative clause in (173) includes a simple causative; *kiah* indicates that *ka<sup>n</sup>dw?* ‘child’ is the causer of the event of smashing.

- (173)  
*?do la? ka<sup>n</sup>dw? pi kiah kracok t<sup>h</sup>o ?bia?*  
command to child **REL** **CAUS** glass DEM **smash**  
Command the child who caused that glass to break
- kiah hew ka? hej*  
CAUS come here  
make them come here.

*k<sup>he</sup>* ‘force’ in example (174) also contains a causative meaning. The embedded part of the clause is intransitive with a verb *liak* ‘enter’ and an agent *mu t<sup>h</sup>o* ‘them’. But when a causative verb *k<sup>he</sup>* ‘force’ is added to the clause, the agent of *liak* ‘enter’ which is *mu t<sup>h</sup>o* ‘3PL’ also becomes a patient. The meaning of (174) is ‘he forced them to enter the forest’.

(174)

*puj tʰɔ      kʰe      mu tʰɔ      liak      ta?      pʰɛ?*  
3SG            force    3PL      enter    in      forest

He forced them to enter the forest.

Eastern Lawa causatives can also be formed by using *ɔʔ* ‘command’. The result is not entailed in this kind of causative. Example (175) is a simple transitive clause consisting of an NP<sub>SUB</sub> - *kaʰdɔw?* ‘child’, a verb *ʔa:n* ‘read’ and an NP<sub>OBJ</sub> *naŋsi:* ‘book’. In example (176), the causer *kʰru* ‘teacher’ is added with the command *ɔʔ* to form a causative construction applied to sentence (175). The agent *kaʰdɔw?* ‘child’ of *ʔa:n* ‘read’ in (175), becomes the patient for the verb *ɔʔ* ‘command’ in (176). The same pattern is also found in example (177).

(175)

*kaʰdɔw?    ʔa:n            naŋsi:*  
child        read            book

The children (are) read(ing) the book.

(or the children are studying).

(176)

*kʰru        ɔʔ                      kaʰdɔw?    ʔa:n      naŋsi:*  
teacher    **command**        child      read      book

Lit: The teacher commanded the child to read the book.

The teacher made the children study.

(177)

*ma?        ɔʔ                      ʔiak ra?      ʔaj    kiah    kaʰdɔw?    som*  
mother    **command**    elder sibling    1SG    give    child        eat rice

Mother commanded my sister to feed the child.

## 7.5 Summary

This chapter presented valence alternations and voice changes in Eastern Lawa. It discussed how argument structure changes through passive constructions and reflexives and reciprocals and also how valence is increased with causative constructions.

# Chapter 8

## Sentence types

### 8.1 Introduction

This chapter presents various Eastern Lawa sentence types. It includes declarative sentences, (8.1), interrogative sentences, (8.2) and imperative sentences (8.3).

### 8.2 Statements (declarative)

The word order of declarative sentences is normally regarded as the basic word order of a language (Konig and Siemund 2007:284). The word order in declarative sentences in Lawa can be either SVO, VSO or VOS, but is most commonly VSO. See section (3.3).

Declarative sentence structure is schematized below<sup>26</sup>. The order of the verb and the NP<sub>SUB</sub> are interchangeable. The NP object follows the NP subject and the verb<sup>27</sup>. Adjuncts occur at the end of the clause. Temporal adverbs can occur either at the end of the clause (most commonly) or at the beginning.

S: [V NP<sub>SUB</sub> NP<sub>OBJ</sub> PP<sub>LOC/GOAL</sub> NP ADV<sub>TIME</sub>]

Example (178) illustrates a simple declarative sentence with a temporal adverbial, an NP object and a beneficiary.

(178) LC.106

<i>k<sup>h</sup>anat</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>	<i>noʔ</i>	<i>nom</i>	<i>ʔenmam</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>laʔ</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>
that.time (TH)	I	drink	milk	Enmom	that	for	me

(During) that time I drank that Enmom milk for myself.

---

<sup>26</sup> Optionality is not marked

<sup>27</sup> Unless a new participant is introduced in which case the NP subject is likely to be right dislocated resulting in a VOS word order.

### 8.3 Questions (interrogative)

This section discusses different ways of forming questions in Eastern Lawa. It discusses ‘Yes-No’ questions, ‘Tag’ questions, ‘Or-Not’ questions and ‘Content’ questions. Interrogative pronouns were listed in section 4.3.

#### 8.3.1 ‘Yes-No’ questions

‘Yes-No’ questions are typically used to inquire about the truth or falsity of the proposition they express (Konig and Siemund 2007:291). In Eastern Lawa, the word order of ‘Yes-No’ questions is the same as that of declarative sentences. The question particle *?am* is optionally added to the beginning of the clause and *?ah* is added to the end. *?am* and *?ah* signal the sentence is interrogative. The general schema for ‘Yes-No’ questions in Lawa is as below.

$$S_{\text{YES-NO QUESTION}} = [(?am) S ?ah]$$

Sentence (179) is an example of a ‘Yes-No’ question in Eastern Lawa. The question particle *?am* is optional in this sentence.

(179)

<i>(?am)</i>	<i>?u:</i>	<i>pa?</i>	<i>ɔpwh</i>	<i>?ah</i>
Q.PRT	NEG	2SG	get	Q.PRT

Didn't you get it?

The answer is either *ɔpwh ?əŋ* ‘got it’ or *ɔpwh tew* ‘didn’t get it’.

#### 8.3.2 Tag questions

Tag questions are formed by adding the negative particle *?u:* to declarative sentences. Tag questions are composed of two parts, the first part is a simple declarative part and the second part is an interrogative part composed of *?u:* with a repetition of the verb as in (180). The word order in the first part is VS. The structure of tag questions is schematized as below.

$$S_{\text{TAG QUESTION}}: [--- V ?u: V]$$

(180)

*hew (pa) ?u: pa? hew*  
go 2SG NEG 2SG go  
(Will you) go, or not?

Example (181) has a subordinate clause which are the thoughts of the boy, and includes a tag question.

(181) R.21

*ka<sup>n</sup>ɔ̀w? lɔŋ kit sam hew ?u: hew*  
boy try think FUT go not go  
The boy thought “Should I go or not?”

### 8.3.3 ‘Or-Not’ questions

Example (182) is an interrogative ‘Or-Not’ sentence in which the speaker asks someone for a choice. An ‘Or-Not’ question is formed by using the word *lɔwh* which means ‘or-not’. The schema for ‘Or-Not’ question formation is as below.

S<sub>‘OR-NOT’ QUESTION</sub>: [V *lɔwh* S]

(182)

*kaj lɔwh pɛ ja? pa?*  
have or.not mango of 2SG  
Do you have mangos or not?

(183) LC.43

*kuat ?ia lɔwh ma? pi?apəŋ joŋ*  
want have.get or.not you female maybe  
Did you want to have a granddaughter or not?

### 8.3.4 Content questions

In content questions, question words are used to replace one of the constituents of the corresponding declarative clause (Kroeger 2005:205). Question words in Lawa content questions appear *in situ*. A question word can also be used by itself to form a content question. Section (4.3) listed interrogative pronouns, or content question words.



Noun phrases, verb phrases, prepositional phrases, and adverbial phrases can be questioned (Bickford 1998:232). The question particle *?ah* is optionally used in content questions. Some of the question words change their meanings depending on the contexts. For example, *juh jaŋ man* ‘do how what’ can be used for several meanings: ‘how’, ‘why’ and ‘what happened’.

#### 8.3.4.1 Content questions: Who

The Eastern Lawa word *pen* ‘who’ is used to get information about people. Example (184) demonstrates a content question using *pen* ‘who’.

(184) LC.182

*?am mah pen ma pia ?əŋ*

Q be **who** mother father his

Who are his parents?

#### 8.3.4.2 Content questions: What

The Eastern Lawa word *man* ‘what’ is used to get information about ‘things’. Examples (185) and (186) have content questions using *man* ‘what’.

(185) LC.54

*mah man tʰɔ*

be **what** that

What is that?

(186)

*mah man mai pa?*

be **what** name 2SG

What is your name?

#### 8.3.4.3 Content questions: When

The Eastern Lawa word *saŋman* ‘when’ is used to get information about when an event will happen. Examples (188) and (187) show content questions using *saŋman*.

(187)

*puj t<sup>h</sup>o sam hew jik ja? te? saŋman*  
3SG FUT go field of his **when**  
When will he go to his field?

(188) LC.46

*nat la pa? saŋman neh mo t<sup>h</sup>o*  
appointment for you **when** eh doctor that  
When is the appointment for you eh? (With) the doctor.

#### 8.3.4.4 Content questions: Where

The Eastern Lawa word *ka?nom* ‘where’ is used to get information about locations. Examples (189) and (190) illustrate content questions using *ka?nom*.

(189)

*bun hew ka?nom*  
Boon go **where**  
Where did Boon go?

(190) LC.2

*?am keh pa? ka?nom neh*  
Q give.birth you **where** eh  
Where did you give birth?

#### 8.3.4.5 Content questions: Why

The Eastern Lawa word *juhman* ‘why’ is used to get information about why something occurred. Example (191) shows a content question using *juhman* ‘why’.

(191)

*hew pa? wiaŋ juhman*  
go 2SG Chiang Mai **why**  
Why did you go to Chiang Mai

### 8.3.4.6 Content questions: How

The Eastern Lawa word *jaŋman* ‘how’ is used to get information about how something happens. Examples (194), (192) and (193) demonstrate content questions using *jaŋman* ‘how’.

(192)

*juh pa? jaŋman*  
do.make 2SG **how**  
How did you do that?

(193) LC.240

*keh mah jaŋman*  
able be **how**  
How would (you) be able?

(194) LC.243

*keh ?u: joŋ jaŋman*  
able not know **how**  
How could (he) not know?

### 8.3.5 Ability questions

The Eastern Lawa word *keh* ‘able’ is used in questions with other question words to ask for information about ability

The general schema for ability questions is as follows:

S<sub>ABILITY</sub>: [(?am) *keh* V *lwh* --- ?ah]

Example (195) shows an ability question regarding riding a bike.

(195)

*keh k<sup>h</sup>ap lwh pa? lot t<sup>h</sup>ip ?ah*  
**able** ride **or.not** 2SG bicycle (NT) **Q.PRT**  
Can you ride a bike or not?

## 8.4 Commands (imperatives)

In Eastern Lawa imperative clauses, the one being told to do something is usually omitted. However, they may be optionally expressed.

Examples (196) and (197) compare declarative and imperative sentences. Example (196) is the declarative sentence while (197) and (198) are examples of imperatives using the same proposition as (196).

Simple declarative:

(196)

*(ʔaj) hew sewm teʔ*  
I go plant.rice PRO.SUBJ  
I went and planted my rice

Imperative:

(197)

*hew sewm teʔ*  
go plant.rice PRO.SUBJ  
Go plant rice!

One way of softening the command is by attaching a polite particle to the verb as in example (198).

(198)

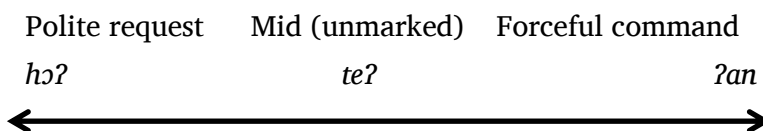
*hew sewm hoʔ*  
go plant.rice (polite.imperative)  
Go plant rice (polite)

Commands can be made stronger by using an imperative intensifier particle. The imperative intensifier particle *ʔan* is added to the verb in (199) to give it the strongest force possible.

(199)

*hew sewm ʔan*  
go plant.rice PRT  
Go plant rice!!

Diagram showing scale of politeness/forcefulness:



### 8.4.1 Negative commands

In Eastern Lawa, negative commands are formed using the negative operator *pu* which is only used for imperative sentences. *pu* always appears in the initial position of the clause. Examples (200) and (201) demonstrate the negative imperative.

(200)

<i>pu</i>	<i>caʔ</i>	<i>jɨŋ</i>	<i>saʔtaʔ</i>	<i>sɔʔ</i>	<i>tʰɔ</i>
NEG.IMPER	possible	pull	tail	dog	3SG

Don't pull that dog's tail!

(201)

<i>pu</i>	<i>caʔ</i>	<i>mbia</i>
NEG.IMPER	possible	forget

Don't forget!

See section 6.3.3 for more on negative imperatives.

## 8.5 Summary

This chapter discussed different sentence types including declarative, interrogative and imperative sentences. The interrogative formations, included 'Yes-No' questions, tag questions, 'or-not' questions and content questions. Then positive and negative imperatives were presented as well as the constructions for softening and strengthening commands.

# Chapter 9

## Complex clauses

### 9.1 Introduction

This chapter briefly presents complex clause constructions in Eastern Lawa. It discusses coordinate clauses in (9.2) and subordinate clauses in (9.3). The constituent structure of subordinate clauses is investigated with complement clauses, adverbial clauses and relative clauses.

### 9.2 Coordination

Coordination refers to syntactic constructions in which two or more units of the same type are combined into a larger unit and still have the same semantic relations with other surrounding elements. The coordinated units may be words, phrases, clauses or sentences (Haspelmath 2007:1). In Eastern Lawa coordinate clauses, the conjunction *miah* ‘and’ is used to join two independent clauses. The coordinate clauses can be schematized as below.

$XP_{\text{COORDINATE}}: [X(P) \textit{miah} X(P)]$

If the subject of both clauses is the same, the subject is usually dropped in the latter sentence as in example (202). In example (202), *miah* conjoins two independent clauses. The subject of the verb *kaik* ‘wash’ in the first clause and *hew* ‘go’ in the second clause is the same.

(202)

(?aj)    *kaik*    *na*    *te?*    *miah*    *hew*    *niŋ*    *p<sup>h</sup>ε?*  
I        wash    face    my    **and**    go     to     forrest  
(I) washed my face and went to the forest

In example (203), two sentences with different subjects are conjoined.

(203)

(ʔaj)    hew   pa:saŋ    **miah**   paj   hew   wiaŋ  
 I           go   Pa Sang   **and**   you   go   Chiang Mai  
 I went to Pa Sang and you went to Chiang Mai

Example (204) shows *miah* combined with ʔəŋ, a subject anaphor, to form *maŋ*<sup>28</sup> which is also glossed here as ‘and’.

(204) LC.251

teʔ   mah   juan    newm    **maŋ**   juan    tiaŋ  
 so   be   village   Bo Luang   **and**   village   Bo Sangae  
 So (he) is (from) Bo Luang and Bo Sangae

### 9.3 Subordination

A subordinate clause is a clause that does not stand alone as a sentence (Kroeger 2005:219). Three basic types of subordinate clauses are discussed in this section: complement clauses, adverbial clauses and relative clauses.

#### 9.3.1 Complementation

A complement clause is a type of clause which fills an argument slot in the structure of another clause. (Dixon 2010:370) In Eastern Lawa, there is no complementizer to introduce the complement clause. The schema for a complement clause is as follows:

S<sub>COMPLEX</sub>: [NP<sub>SUB</sub> V<sub>MATRIX</sub> [S<sub>COMPLEMENT</sub>]]

Examples (205) and (206) illustrate complement clause constructions.

Example (205) has a main clause ʔaj joʔ piʔapəŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ ‘I saw the woman’ with piʔapəŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ hək k<sup>h</sup>ua - being the object of the main clause verb ‘to see’.

(205)

ʔaj	joʔ	piʔapəŋ	t <sup>h</sup> ɔ	hək	k <sup>h</sup> ua	
1SG	see	woman	DEM	hang.out	clothes	

I saw that woman hanging out washing

Example (206) has the thoughts of the frog as the object of the matrix clause.

---

<sup>28</sup> More investigation is required into the properties of *maŋ*.

(206) BDF.21

<i>ləj</i>	<i>kit</i>		<i>kuat</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>riap</i>	<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dɔw?</i>	<i>miah</i>	<i>sɔ?</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔh</i>	
then	think		want to	follow	child	and	dog	DEM	

Then (the frog) thought "(I) want to follow the child and that dog"

### 9.3.2 Adverbial subordination

An adverbial clause is a type of subordinate clause that functions as an adjunct of the main clause (Kroeger 2005:219). In Eastern Lawa adverbial subordinate clauses can come before the main clause or after it.

$S_{\text{COMPLEX}}$ : [ $S_{\text{SUBORDINATE}} S_{\text{MAIN}}$ ]/[ $S_{\text{MAIN}} S_{\text{SUBORDINATE}}$ ]

#### 9.3.2.1 Temporal adverbial clauses

Temporal adverbial subordinators introduce dependent clauses that modify the main clause and give information about the time the main clause takes place.

The word order in temporal adverbial clauses is VS - SV. That is VS in the subordinate clause and SV in the main clause.

##### 9.3.2.1.1 Adverbial clauses using *bat* ‘when’

Example (207) is one sentence made up of a subordinate temporal adverbial clause, followed by the main clause. Note *bat* occurs clause initial, but there is room for a connective to the previous clause as in example (207).

(207) R.56 (Subordinate clause)

<i>kam t<sup>h</sup>ɔh</i>	<b><i>bat</i></b>	<i>kɔh</i>	$\emptyset$	<i>masa?</i>
after.that	<b>when</b>	wake	3SG	morning

R.57 (Main clause)

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dɔw?</i>	<i><sup>n</sup>di</i>	<i>kuncɛ</i>	<i>pi?</i>	<i>lɔwh</i>	<i>te?</i>	<i>ka?ɛwh</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>
child	get	key	REL	had	PRO.SUBJ	yesterday	DEM

After that, when (he) awoke in the morning,  
the child got the key which he had yesterday.



In example (208) the adverbial subordinator *bat* is used to introduce the adverbial clause. The adverbial clause precedes the main clause and the constituent order in the adverbial clause is VS.

(208) (subordinate clause)

*bat*        *kih*    *ta?*        *sa:w*    *pε*        *tʰɔ*  
**when**     slice    uncle    Saaw    mango    DEM

(main clause)

*kʰo*                *lɔk*        *doi:h*    *te?*                *kʰo*  
do.accidentally    cut        finger    PRO.SUBJ        do.accidentally  
When uncle Saaw sliced the mango, (he) accidentally cut his finger.

### 9.3.2.1.2 Temporal adverbial clauses using *kaŋ* ‘before’

Another temporal adverbial clause is a ‘before’ clause whose construction is different from ‘when’ clauses discussed above. The *kaŋ* ‘before’ adverbial clause is schematized as below.

$S_{\text{'BEFORE' CLAUSE}}: [kaŋ S_{\text{FUT}} S_{\text{MAIN}}]$

The word order in *kaŋ* ‘before’ adverbial clauses seems to be SV. In (209), the adverbial clause comes first, introduced by *kaŋ* ‘before’ and followed by the main clause. Interestingly this order can be reversed as in (210) with the main clause coming first and the adverbial clause afterwards.

(209)

*kaŋ*        *sam*    *hew*    *ja?*    *take*                *ʔaprɔh*    *kʰua*        *te?*  
**before**    FUT    go        to        headman    change    clothes    PRO.SUBJ  
Before going to the headmans, (I) changed my clothes a little

(210)

*ʔaprɔh*    *kʰua*        *te?*                *kaŋ*        *sam*    *hew*    *ja?*    *take*  
change    clothes    PRO.SUBJ        **before**    FUT    go        to        headman  
(I) changed my clothes a little, before going to the headman

Example (211) has a similar structure with a subordinating temporal adverbial introducing a dependent clause. The main clause “he went to the market” is SVO and the subordinate clause is VSO “go up he to school”.

(211)

*puj t<sup>h</sup>ɔ̃    hew   to   kat    kaŋ    huak   te?    hɔŋhian*  
3SG        go   to   market   **before**   go.up   PRO.SUBJ   school  
He went to the market before going up to school

### 9.3.2.1.3 Other Temporal Adverbial clauses

Example (212) has *mah* ‘while’ as a temporal adverbial subordinator appearing after the verb and introducing the subordinate clause ‘while I made food’ to encode simultaneous action.

(212)

*piʔapəŋ   t<sup>h</sup>ɔ̃    ʔaic   mah   juh    (ʔaj)   pipuan*  
woman   that   sleep   **while**   do.make   1SG   food  
She slept while I made food

### 9.3.2.2 Reason adverbial clauses

Adverbial clauses for ‘reason’ use the subordinate conjunction *k<sup>h</sup>ɔw*. Example (213) provides an example of a ‘reason’ adverbial clause.

(213) (subordinate clause)

*k<sup>h</sup>ɔw    kuat sɔm   ta sa:w    t<sup>h</sup>ɔ̃*  
**because**   hungry   uncle Saw   DEM  
Because uncle Saw is hungry,

(main clause)

*sam   hew   sewp   taih        niŋ   p<sup>h</sup>ɛ?*  
FUT   go   find   mushroom   in   forest  
he will go to find mushrooms in the forest

### 9.3.2.3 Conditional adverbial clauses

Conditional adverbial clauses are also composed of a dependent conditional clause and an independent main clause. The main subordinate conjunction used in conditional clauses is *pin*.

In (214), the subordinate conjunction *pin* is used for conditional clauses and the adverbial clause has a VS construction.

(214)

*pin*      *klaic*   *p<sup>h</sup>ia*   *pa?*   *lia*   *hej*   *cewp*   *ke?*   *nɔ?*  
if          fast    come   2SG   than   this   meet   3SG   eh  
If you had come faster than you did, (you) would have met him eh

In (215) the subordinate conjunction *pin* is used for a conditional clause and the adverbial clause has a VS construction.

(215)

(*ʔaj*)   *sam*   *ʔajɲ*   *dəw*   *ɲia?*   *pin*   *jit*   *ləj*   *t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
1SG   FUT   return   soon   house   if   stop   rain   DEM  
I will go home soon if the rain stops

Example (216) has the same conditional adverbial *pin* 'if' introducing the subordinate clause.

(216) (main clause)

*puj t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*   *ʔah*   *sam*   *hew*   *ɲa?*   *mɛ*  
she          would have gone   to   wedding

(subordinate clause)

*pin*   *jɔŋ*   *ʔəŋ*            *ɲa?*   *mɛ*   *kaj*   *la?*   *aj*  
if    know   SUBJ.PRO   wedding   was   today

She would've gone to the wedding, if she had known it was today.

#### 9.3.2.4 Concession adverbial subordinators

Concession adverbial subordinators introduce dependent clauses to add information that gives a contrast with the main clause. In example (217) the main clause and subordinate clauses and can be reversed.

(217) (subordinate clause)

*paŋ hua na ʔəŋ kiah ʔəŋ juhkan kaŋ sɔm ʔnɔŋ*  
**even.though** boss theirs give.let them work half.day only  
Even though their boss let them work half a day only,

(main clause)

*puj ŋan noj ʔdaŋ naʔ ʔpwh teʔ juhkan wan saw*  
workers complain **still** at having PRO.SUBJ work Saturday  
the workers still complained at having to work on Saturday

Example (218) is another example of concession adverbial subordination.

(218) (main clause)

*puj tʰɔ ʔdi ʔdaŋ rot tʰɔ*  
he purchase **still** car DEM

(subordinate clause)

*paŋ jɔŋ Ø ŋuah rot tʰɔ piaŋ la ʔəŋ*  
**even.though** know he price car DEM expensive for him  
He still bought the car, even though he knew it was (too) expensive for him

Example (219) shows that the subordinate clause can be SV causing the main clause to become VS.

(219) (subordinate clause)

*ʔu: jɔŋ kit haik laŋ kɔw ʔəŋ riʔ ʔah toʔ kanaj juan hej*  
**in.spite.of** fact 3SG grow.up inside village this  
In spite of the fact that he grew up in this village,

(main clause)

*ʔu: kiah teʔ keh kʰrəʔŋ lavaiaʔ*  
NEG give PRO.SUBJ ability speak Lawa  
it didn't give him the ability to speak Lawa

### 9.3.2.5 Purpose or Result adverbial subordinators

“Purpose” or “result” adverbials introduce dependent clauses to add information about the aim of the main clause. Purpose or reason clauses usually imply some intention or plan by the subject of the main clause.

Example (220) has the main clause before the subordinate clause and both are SVO word order.

(220) (main clause)

*puj*            *campen*        *juh kan*    *k<sup>h</sup>rəŋ*    *jaŋ*  
person        must (TH)    work        every    kind  
People must do every kind of work,

(subordinate clause)

*tian*            *pa?*    *sam*    *ɭawh*    *səm*  
**in.order.to**    2SG    will    get        food  
in order to have something to eat.

### 9.3.3 Relative clauses

A relative clause is a clause that functions as a modifier of the head noun in a noun phrase. There are three basic parts of a relative clause construction: the head noun, the modifying clause and the relativizer (Kroeger 2005:230). Relative clauses in Eastern Lawa always follow their heads; therefore, they are postnominal.

In Eastern Lawa, the relativizer *pi?* is optionally used to introduce relative clauses. *pi?* can be used for both animate and inanimate entities. The relativized position can only be either the subject or the object. The oblique position cannot be relativized. The schematic construction for the relative clause is as below.

S<sub>RELATIVE</sub>: [(*pi?*) S]

Only VS word order is allowed inside relative clauses.

When we compare examples (221) and (222) we see that the relativizer is optional, as it appears in the noun phrase in (222) *ka<sup>n</sup>dəw? pi? p<sup>h</sup>iat <sup>2</sup>nəŋ* but not in the same noun phrase in (221).

(221) R.44a

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? ti? pui cɔh ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? Ø p<sup>h</sup>iat <sup>2</sup>nɔŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
 child one Clf. invite **child REL arrive alone that**  
 One of the kids invited the child who arrived alone,

R.44b

*lɔŋ pət ŋɔ*  
 try switch on light  
 try switching on the light.

(222) R.45

*wat pət ŋɔ ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? pi? p<sup>h</sup>iat <sup>2</sup>nɔŋ mait aphawm*  
 when switch on light **child who arrive alone** happy  
 When (he) switched the light on, the child who arrived alone was happy

Example (223) demonstrates a relative clause modifying the head noun *ka<sup>n</sup>dbw?* ‘child’ and it gives additional information about it. The head noun *ka<sup>n</sup>dbw?* ‘child’ is the subject of both clauses – the relative clause and the matrix clause. There is a gap in the subject position in the relative clause. The word order within the relative clause is VS. The verb has to appear directly after the relativizer *pi* within the relative clause. Therefore, the gap for the subject is marked after the verb in (223).

(223)

<i>ka<sup>n</sup>dbw?</i>		<i>pi</i>		<i>pian</i>		<i>Ø</i>		<i>k<sup>h</sup>ai liat ʔɔk t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>		<i>ʔi:</i>		<i>jum kaʔew</i>
child		<b>REL</b>		have				dengue (TH) that		COMPL		die yesterday

That child, who had dengue fever, died yesterday

Sentence (224) contains a headless relative clause in which no head noun is expressed. Headless relative clauses are frequently found in Eastern Lawa.

(224) R.2

*tia? ʔu: jɔŋ pi juh te?*  
 bored not know REL do PRO.SUBJ  
 Bored (he) didn’t know that which he should do.

## **9.4 Summary**

This chapter presented complex clause constructions in Eastern Lawa. It discussed coordinate clauses in (9.2) and subordinate clauses in (9.3). The constituent structure of subordinate clauses was investigated with complement clauses, adverbial clauses and relative clauses.

## Chapter 10

### Summary

As stated in the introduction, the findings presented in this thesis are an overview or sketch of the grammar structure of this language. It does not present an exhaustive or in-depth analysis of many parts of this language and such an undertaking would require a different format.

Chapter 1 presented an introduction to the Eastern Lawa people, their linguistic family affiliation, historical background, demographics, ethnography, culture, and linguistic vitality. The methodology for this thesis was presented along with a list of the fieldwork, informants, corpus size and type and theoretical framework, followed by a short literature review and the limitations and scope.

Chapter 2 presented the phonology and morphology of Eastern Lawa borrowing heavily from previous work by Mitani and Lipsius. An orthography for Eastern Lawa is being tested which will help to clarify where work is needed with the phonology. The morphology was presented including examples of reduplication, compounding, elaborate expressions and productive prefixes.

Chapter 3 presented the basic clause structure of Eastern Lawa with an investigation into word order. Various methods were used to test word order but finally statistics proved that the predominant word order in natural conversation is VSO. Next the core arguments of subject and verb and the non core arguments of recipient, beneficiary, accompaniment, instrument, and source were investigated. These non core arguments are usually obliques in Eastern Lawa. Further investigation might help to explain the reasons why there is a change from VSO to SVO in certain circumstances.

Chapter 4 presented the different Eastern Lawa word classes, including nouns, interrogatives, verbs, adjectives, adverbs, demonstratives, numerals, classifiers, quantifiers, auxiliaries, and prepositions. These were listed with some examples to show typical usage and some tests for identifying verbs and adjectives.

Chapter 5 presented the internal structure of Eastern Lawa noun phrases. Different types of noun phrases such as pronouns, possessive noun phrases, coordinate noun



phrases and nominal compounds were discussed. The head noun precedes any modifiers in Eastern Lawa noun phrases. Demonstratives appear to be much more moveable than other constituents. Relative clauses come after adjectives if they are together in a noun phrase.

Chapter 6 presented verb phrases and looked firstly at single verb heads versus multiple verbs in serial verb constructions. Various types of serial verb constructions were presented, including simultaneous motion, sequential motion, motion with goal and motion with reached goal. Next, various Eastern Lawa verb phrase constituents were investigated including; negation, directionals, tense/aspect/mood and adverbs. Negation was presented with both pre-verbal and post-verbal negators. There are three different negative operators: *tew* and *?u* for declarative clauses and *pu* for imperative clauses. Eastern Lawa expresses future by using *sam*, and expresses past with *?i*. The particles *ham* and *hɔ?*, are used to express politeness.

Chapter 7 presented various valence alternations in Eastern Lawa. It discussed how argument structures change through passive, causative, reflexive and reciprocal constructions.

Chapter 8 discussed different sentence types including declarative sentences, interrogative sentences and imperative sentences. The interrogative formations, including ‘Yes-No’ questions, Tag questions, ‘Or-Not’ questions and content questions were discussed. Positive and negative imperatives were presented and constructions for softening and strengthening commands.

Chapter 9 presented complex clause constructions in Eastern Lawa. It discussed coordinate clauses and subordinate clauses. In coordinate clauses, *miah* ‘and’ is used to connect two independent clauses. The constituent order in complement clauses can be both VS and SV but further data would be helpful to confirm this. In adverbial subordinate clauses the order of the two clauses is mostly VS and depending on the type of clause the adverbial subordinate clause can be flexible appearing before or after main clauses.

Relative clauses are postnominal and optionally use *pi* to introduce the relative clause. The relativized position can be either the subject or the object. The word order within a relative clause is always VS.

Negation is another area that needs further research to clarify why *tew* is used in certain situations and *?u* in others.

More research would help to clarify what pragmatic or contextual factors influence the word order choices between VSO and SVO in any given situation.

Tense and aspect markers also need further research to clarify understanding and the interreaction between them. More mood or modality markers need to be found and investigated.

Any mistakes or errors in this thesis are completely the fault of the author and not of any advisors or Eastern Lawa language helpers.

It has been my privilege to work on the Eastern Lawa language and I hope that further research by myself or others will clarify these and other matters that are still to be fully understood. The next big step is with orthography development for Eastern Lawa and will no doubt shed light on the limitations of the current understanding of the phonology.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Bickford, Albert J. 1998. Tools for analyzing the world's languages: morphology and syntax. Dallas: Summer Institute of Linguistics.
- Bisetto, A. and S. Scalise, 2005. The classification of compounds. *Lingue e Linguaggio*, IV(2), 319-32.
- Block, Karen. 1996. Plang: Some possessive noun phrases. In PRDI Technical Paper 20: Payap University.
- Bybee, Joan L., Revere Perkins, & William Pagliuca. 1994. The Evolution of Grammar: Tense, Aspect, and Modality in the Languages of the World. Chicago: University of Chicago Press.
- Comrie, Bernard & Sandra A. Thompson, 2007. Lexical nominalization. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 3: Grammatical categories and the lexicon. Ed. By Timothy Shopen. 334-381. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Diffloth, G. 1980. The Wa Languages. Berkeley : Department of Linguistics, University of California.
- Dixon, R. M. W. 2010. Basic linguistic theory. Volume 1: Methodology. New York: Oxford University Press.
- Dixon, R. M. W. 2010. Basic linguistic theory. Volume 2: Grammatical Topics. New York : Oxford University Press.
- Dryer, Matthew S. 2001. Mon-Khmer word order from a crosslinguistic perspective. *Journal of South East Asian Linguistics Society*. 83-99.
- Dryer, Matthew S. 2007. Word order. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 1: Clause structure. Ed Timothy Shopen. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Giaphong Suchada. 2004. Plang grammar as spoken in Huay Namkhun village, Chiang Rai Province. MA thesis, Mahidol University.

- Haspelmath, Martin. 2007. Coordination. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 2: Complex constructions. Ed. By Timothy Shopen. 1-51. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Janzen, Hermann. 1976. The system of verb-aspect words in Pale. In *Austroasiatic Studies*. 659-667. Honolulu: University of Hawai'i Press.
- Jenvit Suknaphasawat. 2007. Grammar of Pang-pung Plang. Unpublished Ms.
- Jiranan Komonkitiskun. 1985. Some general characteristics of Lawa Grammar. MA thesis, Mahidol University.
- Konig, Ekkehard & Peter Siemund. 2007. Speech act distinctions in grammar. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 1: Clause structure. Ed. By Timothy Shopen. 276-324. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Kroeger, Paul R. 2005. *Analyzing grammar: An introduction*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Kunstadter, Peter. 1966a. Living with Thailand's gentle Lua. *National Geographic Magazine* 130.1:122-152
- Lewis, Emily. 2008. Grammatical studies of Man Noi Plang. MA thesis: Payap University.
- Lewis, M. Paul (ed.). 2009. *Ethnologue: Languages of the World*, Sixteenth ed. Online: From <http://www.ethnologue.com/>. Sep 2011.
- Lipsius, Freidhard. Unpublished phonology of Eastern Lawa.
- Mitani, Yasujuki. 1978. *Phonological Studies of Lawa: Description and Comparison*. Doctoral Thesis, Cornell University.
- Nahhas, Ramzi. 2006. *Sociolinguistic Survey of Lawa in Thailand*. Payap University.
- Polinsky, Maria. In: Dryer, Matthew S. & Martin Haspelmath, (eds.) *The World Atlas of Language Structures Online*. Munich: Max Planck Digital Library, chapter 109. Online: <http://wals.info/chapter/109>. September 2013.
- O'Grady, William; John Archibald, Mark Aronoff, & Janie Rees-Miller, (2001). *Contemporary Linguistics: An Introduction* (Fourth ed.). Boston: Bedford/St. Martin's.

- Paulsen, Debbie and Karen Block. 1997. A preliminary report on independent clause structure in Plang. Chiang Mai: PRDI Technical Paper 27.
- Schachter, Paul and Timothy Shopen. 2007. Part-of-speech systems. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 1: Clause structure. ed. By Timothy Shopen. 1-6-. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Seng Mai, Ma. 2012. A Descriptive Grammar of Wa. MA thesis: Payap University.
- Shopen, Timothy (ed.). 2007. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 1: Clause structure. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Shopen, Timothy (ed.). 2007. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 2: Complex constructions. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Shopen, Timothy (ed.). 2007. Language typology and syntactic description. Volume 3: Grammatical categories and the lexicon. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Talmy, Givon. 1995. Functionalism and Grammar. Philadelphia: John Benjamins Publishing Company.

## APPENDIX A

### LA CONVERSATION

A conversation with La after she had her baby. Participants are La, her mother, (M La), khru A. Recorded 23/09/2013 and transcribed by Greg Blok with help from khru A.

LC.1

*ʔam keh paʔ ʔiah kɔw paʔ caŋhɔʔ*

Did give.birth you able your.body then

Q V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> V NP ADV<sub>TIME</sub>

Did you give birth on your own (naturally) then? (a week ago)

S: A

LC.2

*ʔam keh paʔ kanom nɛ*

Q give.birth you where eh

Q V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> INT

Where did you give birth?

S: A

LC.3

*keh cum toŋ*

give.birth Chom Thong

V XP

(I) gave birth (in) Chom Thong

S: La

LC.4

*cum toŋ ʔeh*

Chom Thong PRT.AGRE

Chom Thong eh

S: A

LC.5

*ʔamaic ʔapəŋ ʔah*

male female Q

NP NP Q

Boy or girl?

S: A

LC.6

*ʔapəŋ*

female

girl

S: La

LC.7

*kaj ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? kilo mah kit ʔej*

have.exists how.many kilos be born her

V ADV.INT NP V V NP

How many kilos was she at birth?

S: A

LC.8

*kaj laʔa kilo paj ti? k<sup>h</sup>it ʔnɔŋ*

have.exists two kilos and one hundred.grams only

V NUM CLF CONJ NUM CLF ADV

(she) was two kilos and one hundred grams only

S: La

LC.9

*tia? <sup>m</sup>buj lah*

small somewhat Q

ADJ ADV Q

(That's) quite small eh

S: A

LC.10

*tε*        *sompun*   *joŋ*        *k<sup>h</sup>εŋrεŋ*  
but (TH)   perfect   maybe   strong (TH)  
CONJ        VADJ                    VADJ

But she is hopefully perfect and strong

S: A

LC.11

*liaŋ*        *ʔu: ʔeh*        *tew*        *lah*  
jaundice   anything   not        Q  
V                                    NEG        Q

(she) wasn't jaundice or anything?

S: A

Interesting we can have *ʔu: ʔeh* between the verb and the negation.

LC.12

*liaŋ*  
jaundice  
V  
(she was) jaundice

S: La

LC.13

*lɔwh lɔwh*   *pa?*        *ʔop*        *ʔah*  
did.have.to   you        incubate   Q  
V                    NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>   V                    ADV

Did you have to incubate (her)?

S: A

Repetition of the verb *lɔwh lɔwh* to make it more forceful? – you **had to had to**.

LC.14

*lɔwh*        *ʔop*        *ti?*        *sewm*        *ʔnɔŋ*  
have.to   incubate   one        night        only  
V            V                    NUM        NP        ADV

(she) had to be incubated for one night only

S: La

*lɔwh* before another verb meaning 'had to'. *lɔwh* after a verb means past tense.



LC.15

<i>ʔop</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>	<i>tiʔ taic</i>	<i>tiʔ</i>	<i>sewm</i>	<i>ʔnəŋ</i>
incubate	her	a.little	one	night	only
V	3SG	ADV	NUM	NP	ADV

She was incubated just a little, one night only

S: La

LC.16

<i>caʔ</i>	<i>nat (TH)</i>	<i>tew</i>	<i>paʔ</i>	<i>joŋ</i>	<i>mɔ</i>	<i>tʰɔ</i>
possible	make.appointment	not	you	maybe	doctor (TH)	
IRREALIS	V		NEG	NP	IRREALIS	NP
						DEM

Didn't the doctor make an apt with you, maybe?

S: A

VOS word order - introduction of a new participant - the doctor.

*caʔ* is glossed as 'possible'.

LC.17

<i>nat</i>	<i>ʔmɛ</i>	<i>hew</i>	<i>truat</i>	<i>vaksin</i>	<i>jaŋ</i>	<i>hej</i>	<i>tʰɔh</i>
appointment	another	go	check	vaccine	like	this	eh
NP		V	V	NP			PRT.AGRE

Another appointment to go check vaccines and stuff like this eh?

S: A

LC.18

<i>nat</i>	<i>kiah</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>	<i>hew</i>	<i>truat</i>	<i>teʔ</i>	<i>niŋ</i>	<i>hɔt</i>
appointment	give	me	go	check	PRO.SUBJ	at	Hot
NP	V	NP	V	V	PRO.SUBJ	PP	NP <sub>LOC</sub>

An appointment was given to me to go check-up at Hot

S: La

LC.19

<i>ʔi nɔj</i>	<i>naʔ</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>	<i>kit</i>	<i>lɔwh</i>	<i>cum toŋ</i>	<i>hɔ</i>
little one	of	my	born	PAST	Chom Thong	also
NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>	POSS	NP <sub>POSSESSOR</sub>	V	V	NP <sub>LOC</sub>	ADV

My little one was born in Chom Thong also

S: A

*lɔwh* after a verb meaning 'had that experience' or 'was/were'.

LC.20

*kit lbwh cum tɔŋ taŋ laʔa teʔ*  
born PAST Chom Thong both two mine  
V V NP<sub>LOC</sub> [QTY NUM PRO.SUBJ]<sub>SUBJ</sub>  
born in Chom Thong - both of mine

S: A

LC.21

*piʔ ʔakia tʰɔ saʔŋej lbwh sia sia*  
the.one first jaundice PAST little little  
[REL ADV ]<sub>SUBJ</sub> V V ADV<sub>DEGREE</sub> ADV<sub>DEGREE</sub>  
The first (born) was a little jaundice

S: A

LC.22

*ʔaik paʔ kʰum teʔ lah*  
stay.at you spa PRO.SUBJ Q  
V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NP PRO.SUBJ Q  
Have you stayed at the spa<sup>29</sup>?

S: A

LC.23

*ʔam kiah maʔ keʔ ʔaik kaʰdɔwʔ saŋaj jaŋ hej tʰɔh*  
Q give.let mother 3SG stay how.many day like this eh  
Q.PRT V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NP<sub>OBJ</sub> V Q NP PRT.AGRE  
How many days do they let her (the baby's) mother stay like that (in the spa)?

S: A

*jaŋ hej tʰɔh* seems to be a common phrase or feature of sentence endings.

---

<sup>29</sup> Cultural Note: The spa here is talking about a circle they dig in the ground that is about half a foot deep, into which they place stones that have been heated up in a fire. Then the new mother sits in the circle and they put water on the stones to make it steamy and hot and cover the mother and the whole circle with a cloth so she is inside. Hence the translation spa.

LC.24

*kʰrɔʔ ʔuː jɔŋ tiʔ saŋaɪc tʰɔh*  
enough don't know one day eh  
ADV NEG V NUM NP PRT.AGRE

Not sure if one day was enough eh

S: Mother of La

LC.25

*kuat kʰrɔʔ pəŋ*  
want enough 3SG &  
V ADV DEM

She wanted that much.

S: Mother of La

*pəŋ* includes *paʔ* '2/3SG' and *ʔəŋ* the subject marker (or pronoun).

LC.26

*ʔe mah tiʔ saŋaɪc ʔnɔŋ ʔah*  
really be one day only Q  
EXCLM V<sub>COP</sub> NUM NP ADV Q

Really! Only one day?

S: A

LC.27

*ʔah tʰɔ*  
said that  
V NP

that's (what she) said

S: M La

LC.28

*ʔaj ʔaik pian ʔatʰit teʔ*  
I stay whole week (TH) PRO.SUBJ  
NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> V ADV NP PRO.SUBJ

I was there for a whole week

S: A

LC.29

*kʰrɔʔ ʔəŋ tiʔ saŋaic*

enough she one day

V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NUM NP

She had enough (after) one day / it was enough after one day

S: M La

‘She had enough (after) one day’ if the *ʔəŋ* is pronominal and points to La or ‘It was enough one day’ if *ʔəŋ* is a dummy subject.

LC.30

*ʔuː kʰrɔʔ kʰrɔʔ kʰrɔʔ pəŋ hɔʔ laʔ ʔəŋ*

not enough want enough 3SG + also for 3SG

NEG.IRREALIS ADV V ADV DEM ADV PP NP

Not enough. She only wanted (that much) for her(self)

S: M La

LC.31a

*ʔin ʔaic paʔ ta kʰum teʔ*

if stay you in spa PRO.SUBJ

ADV<sub>CONDITIONAL</sub> V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> PP NP<sub>LOC</sub> POSS

If you stay in your spa,

S: A

LC.31b

*ʔam ʔah ʔmɛ keʔ man mah ʔəŋ puʔ hɔ*

Q say another 3SG what be it person else

Q V ADV NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> INT V<sub>COP</sub> NP NP ADV

What’s another way to say it? (what does) someone else (call) it?

S: A

LC.33

*liak kʰaw saw*

enter rice (NT) wash (NT)

V NP V

Enter a rice wash

S: M La

LC.34

*mah tew pin ?ah lawia? ?e ?əŋ hɔ?*  
be not if speak Lawa our it HORT  
V<sub>COP</sub> NEG ADV V NP POSS NP

No, if we say it in our Lawa (language) - another way

S: A

LC.35

*liak to k<sup>h</sup>um*  
enter in spa  
V PP NP<sub>LOC</sub>  
enter into the spa

S: M La

LC.36

*?o liak pa? to k<sup>h</sup>um*  
oh enter you in spa  
EXCLM V NP PP NP<sub>LOC</sub>  
oh enter into the spa

S: A

LC.37

*p<sup>h</sup>uaŋ te?*  
steam PRO.SUBJ  
VADJ POSS  
Your steamy (place)

S: M La

LC.38

<i>?aik</i>	<i>ŋɔ</i>	<i>?ah</i>	<i>jaŋ</i>	<i>hej</i>	<i>lah</i>		<i>?aik</i>	<i>?a</i>	<i>p<sup>h</sup>uaŋ</i>	<i>te?</i>
stay.at	fire	say	like	this	Q		stay.be.at	??	steam	PRO.SUBJ
V	NP	V					V	??	VADJ	PRO.SUBJ

Stay by the fire, is this how you say it – Stay at your steamy (place).

S: A

Is *?a* pronominal? Like an unspecified person? Or is it verbal?

LC.40

*p<sup>h</sup>uaŋ pa? te?*

steam you PRO.SUBJ

VADJ NP PRO.SUBJ

Your steamy place

S: M La

LC.41

*kaj kuan so? ma? kam hej lah*

have grandchild your after this Q

V NP<sub>OBJ</sub> POSS ADV DEM Q

(You) have your grandchild from now on eh

S: A

LC.42

*ca ŋəm tew la pa lah*

possibly lonely NEG for you Q

IRREALIS.FUT V NEG PP NP Q

It's likely you won't be lonely eh

S: A

LC.43

*kuat ?ia ləwh ma? pi?apəŋ joŋ*

want have.get or.not you female maybe

V V Q NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NP<sub>OBJ</sub> IRREALIS

So are you happy to have a granddaughter or not?

Lit: Want to have or not you a girl maybe?

S: A

This is a good example of expressing uncertainty with the word *joŋ*.

LC.44

*jum kok nə lah pi? kaj kuan hej lah*

tasty eat always eh that have child this eh

ADJ V ADV Q REL V NP DEM Q

It's good (tastes great) eh! That you have this grandchild eh?

S: A

LC.45

*mak luan pa? ?u: ?eh bwh lah*  
enjoy very you everything experience eh  
V ADV NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NP<sub>OBJ</sub> V  
You enjoy everything you have eh

S: A

LC.46

*nat la pa? saŋman neh mɔ tʰɔh*  
appointment for you when eh doctor DEM  
V PP NP INT Q NP DEM  
The appointment for you is when? (To visit the) doctor

S: A

LC.47

*sa?eh joŋ*  
tomorrow think  
ADV IRREALIS  
I think its tomorrow

S: M La

LC.48

*sa?eh*  
tomorrow  
tomorrow

S: LA

LC.49

*?oh sa?eh huak ?mɛ pa la mɔ tə*  
oh tomorrow go.up again you to doctor really  
EXCLM ADV<sub>TIME</sub> V ADV NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> PP NP EXCLM  
Oh really! Are you going up to the doctor again tomorrow?

S: A

In this example ‘the doctor’ is again at the end of the sentence but in a prepositional phrase and without the subject marker *tʰɔ*.

LC.50a

*c<sup>h</sup>it vaksin la ?əŋ*  
inject vaccine for her  
V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> PP NP<sub>OBJ</sub>

To get vaccinations for her

S: M La

LC.50b

*sam co? ?əŋ kam ŋam joŋ sa?eh*  
FUT stick.in her also blood think tomorrow  
TAM V NP ADV NP IRREALIS ADV

and I think to check her blood also tomorrow

S: M La

LC.51

*te? saŋej la? ?əŋ caŋ hɔ lah*  
so jaundice to her before that eh  
ADV V PP NP ADV DEM Q

So was she jaundice before that eh?

S: A

LC.52

*te mah ?u saŋej soh pi tia hej caŋ hɔ*  
but be NEG jaundice too.much REL small this before.that  
ADV V<sub>COP</sub> NEG V QTY [ ]NP ADV<sub>TIME</sub>

But this little one was not too jaundice before that

S: M La

LC.53

*kaj kua la te? paj ka?<sup>m</sup>brah*  
have.exist eleven more half  
V NUM CONJ NUM

(She) was 11.5

S: La



LC.54

*mah man tʰɔ*  
be what that  
V<sub>COP</sub> Q DEM  
What is that?

S: A

LC.55

*səŋej ʔeŋ ʔɔʔ*  
jaundice 3SG eh  
V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>  
It's jaundice eh

S: A

LC.56

*tɛ mah kaʔ<sup>m</sup>brah ʔəŋ ʔnəŋ pi kən tʰɔh*  
but be half 3SG only which too.much (TH) that  
CONJ V<sub>COP</sub> NUM NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> ADV REL ADV DEM  
But it was only half too much

S: La

LC.57

*jəʔ jaŋ joŋ kiah pi tia haik namnak laʔa kilo*  
not.sure give that.little.one reach weight (TH) two kilo  
IRREALIS V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> V NP NUM CLF

I'm not sure (if) the little ones are given (vaccine until they) reach weigh two kilos

S La

LC.58

*joʔ kiah ʔəŋ ʔop teʔ*  
see give her incubation PRO.SUBJ  
V V NP<sub>OBJ</sub> V PRO.SUBJ  
(They) saw her (and) incubated her

S: La

LC.59

*mɔŋ namnak pi tia tʰɔ haik laʔa kilo*  
wait weight REL little(one) that reach two kilo  
V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> POSS DEM V NUM CLF

They wait till the weight of the little one reaches two kilos

S: La

LC.60

*ʔoh mah kit rɔŋ haik tew təʔ*  
oh be born first.start reach not really  
EXCLM V<sub>COP</sub> V ADV<sub>TIME</sub> V NEG EXCLM

Oh really! Was (she) born, to start with not reaching (2 kilos)?

S: A

LC.61

*haik*  
reach  
V

(she) reached (2 kilos)

S: La

LC.61

*hej man kit man ʔɔk kanɔk mah laʔ ʔəŋ*  
this what born what out outside be to it  
DEM V PP ADV<sub>PLACE</sub> V<sub>COP</sub> PP 3SG

this was... when (she) was born - came out - (she) was to it (2 kilos)

S: La

LC.62

*ti? sawm leih namnak ʔəŋ*  
one night reduce weight her  
NUM ADV<sub>TIME</sub> V [NP POSS]<sub>SUBJ</sub>

her weight dropped one night (later)

S: La

LC.63

*keh tamachat pa kɔw pa lah keh ʔnɔŋ pa lah*  
able naturally (TH) you body your eh able only you eh  
V ADV NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NP POSS Q V ADV NP Q

Were you able (to give birth) naturally – your body? Able to only you?

S: A

LC.64

*tɛ mah rɛŋ mɔ ʔəŋ la? ʔaj*  
but be induce doctor DEM to me  
CONJ V<sub>COP</sub> V NP DEM PP NP

But the doctor induced me

S: La

LC.65

*ʔoh ʔam ʔi pun kamnot kʰrot ʔəŋ ʔah*  
oh Q already passed due.date (TH) birth (TH) 2SG / Q  
EXCLM TAM V [NP<sub>TIME</sub> V POSS]<sub>SUBJ</sub>

Oh, your birth due date was already passed?

S: A

LC.66

*pun ʔəŋ*  
passed it  
V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>

(the due.date) was passed

S: La

LC.67a

*ʔi pun ʔəŋ hɔ? lah*  
already passed it also eh  
TAM V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> Q

The due date was already past also eh,

S: A

LC.67b

*tɛ mah ʔu: paʔ ti sokia viak lah*  
 but be not you yet pain stomach eh  
 CONJ V<sub>COP</sub> NEG NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> ADV V NP Q  
 but you weren't having labour pains yet eh

S: A

LC.68a

*mah ʔeʔ marɔŋ ma mah ʔəŋ*  
 be A before when be it  
 V<sub>COP</sub> NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> ADV V<sub>COP</sub>  
 I was... before when it was (my time),

S: A

LC.68b

*pi rɔŋ mah lɔwh jaŋ hɔ lah*  
 the.one first be PAST like also eh  
 [REL NUM]<sub>SUBJ</sub> V<sub>COP</sub> V  
 (my) first one was also like that eh

S: A

LC.69

<i>ʔia</i>	<i>tew</i>	<i>soʔkia</i>	<i>viak</i>		<i>mɔ</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>rɛŋ</i>	<i>lɔwh</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>
have.get	not	pain	stomach		doctor		induce	PAST	me
V	NEG	[V	NP] <sub>OBJ</sub>		NP	DEM	V	V	NP <sub>OBJ</sub>

(I) didn't have labour pains. The doctor induced me.

S: A

LC.70

<i>kam t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>p<sup>h</sup>ɔ di</i>		<i>ʔi nɔj</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>sam</i>	<i>haik</i>	<i>maesa</i>	<i>lah</i>
after.that	good (TH)		little.one	that	will	arrive	April	eh
ADV			NP	DEM	FUT	V	NP <sub>TIME</sub>	

After that (it was) good. The little one will arrive in April eh

S: A

LC.71

*sam haik mah pi maj puj*

will arrive be Songkran

FUT V V<sub>COP</sub> NP

(It) was going to arrive (when it) was Songkran

S: A

LC.72a

*tew mah pi maj puj*

not be Songkran

NEG V<sub>COP</sub> NP

But if it was Songkran

S: A

Interesting reversal of *mah tew* 'is not' to *tew mah* 'but if it was'.

LC.72b

*ʔu: sam kaj mɔ ʔaik la pa ʔah jaŋ hej*

not will have doctor stay.at for you say like this

IRREALIS FUT V NP V PP NP

"maybe wouldn't have a doctor there for you," they said.

S: A

LC.73

*ləj chit jia reŋ la ʔe*

then (TH) inject (TH) medicine (TH) induce to A

ADV V [NP V]NP<sub>OBJ</sub> PP NP

then (they) injected medicine to induce me

S: A

LC.74a

*reŋ laʔ ʔaj newm ma sataj mɔŋ*

induce to me from eight o'clock

V PP NP ADV NUM CLF

(They) induced me at eight in the morning.

S: A

LC.74b

*kit tiaŋ hɔwh ?i nɔj ?ɔ?*  
born lunch just.after little.one eh  
V ADV<sub>TIME</sub> ADV NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>

My little one was born just after lunch eh.

(?ɔ? = good emotional content)

S: A

LC.75

*newm paj la?a*  
start after two  
V ADV NUM

(I) started after two

S: La

LC.76

*paj la?a t<sup>h</sup>ɔh*  
after two DEM  
ADV NUM

that's after two

S: A

LC.77

*newm la?a mɔŋ wan suk*  
start two o'clock Friday  
V NUM CLF ADV<sub>TIME</sub>

(I) started two o'clock on Friday

S: La

LC.78

*ma? pu ?eh*  
evening eh  
NP Q

In the evening?

S: A

LC.79

*ma?sa?ŋaj haik mah keh wan saw*  
middle.of.day arrive be birth Saturday  
ADV<sub>TIME</sub> V V<sub>COP</sub> NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> ADV<sub>TIME</sub>

The birth (arrive was born) was the middle of the day Saturday

S: La

LC.80

*kit tiaŋ kəŋ*  
born lunch half  
V ADV<sub>TIME</sub> QTY  
born half past twelve

S: M La

LC.81

*kit wan saw t<sup>h</sup>oh*  
born Saturday eh  
V ADV  
Born on Saturday eh

S: A

LC.82

*tiaŋ kəŋ ma?sa?ŋaj ?me*  
lunch half (TH) middle.of.day another  
ADV<sub>TIME</sub> QTY ADV<sub>TIME</sub> ADV  
half past twelve middle of the next day

S: M La

LC.83

*?na faj kuap te?*  
nearly whole rotation PRO.SUBJ  
ADV QTY V PRO.SUBJ  
Nearly a whole 24 hours

S: La

LC.84

<i>ta?</i>	<i>ʔu:</i>	<i>mah</i>	<i>so?</i>	<i>tamachat</i>	<i>sam</i>	<i>keh</i>	<i>ʔiah</i>
so	NEG	be	pain	natural	will	birth	able
ADV	TAM	V <sub>COP</sub>	[NP	ADJ] <sub>SUBJ</sub>	FUT	V	

So, it's not natural pain (like) when you're able to give birth naturally

S: M La

Is ta a dummy subject?

LC.85

<i>ʔi</i>	<i>faj</i>	<i>ho?</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>oh</i>
already	whole	also	eh
TAM	QTY	ADV	

A whole (24 hours) eh?

S: A

LC.86

<i>ʔia</i>	<i>ʔdaŋ</i>	<i>la?a</i>	<i>chuamɔŋ</i>
have.get	another	two	hours
V	ADV	NUM	NP

Had another two hours (short of 24)

S: La

LC.87

<i>rɛŋ</i>	<i>la?</i>	<i>pa?</i>	<i>lah</i>		<i>mɔ</i>	<i>lah</i>
induce	for	you	Q		doctor	Q
V	PP	NP	INT		NP	INT

so (they) induced you eh? The doctor eh?

S: A

This is more of a statement than a question.

LC.88

<i>tia</i>	<i>luan</i>	<i>kit</i>	<i>pi tia</i>
small	very	born	that.little.one
ADJ	ADV	V	NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>

The little one was born very small.

S: M La



LC.89

*tia? ma? maŋ joŋ*

small mother is maybe

ADJ NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> V<sub>COP</sub> IRREALIS

(because) the mother is small maybe

S: A

*maŋ* = *mah* + *?əŋ*

LC.89

*?u: kuat kok joŋ*

not want eat maybe

NEG V V IRREALIS

*?u: pa mak ?u: ?eh*

not you enjoy anything

NEG NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> V NP

Maybe (you) didn't want to eat. You didn't like anything.

S: A

LC.90

*tε so? luan ca?*

but pain very possible

CONJ V ADV IRREALIS?

*lɔwh newm mah te?*

was since be PRO.SUBJ

V ADV COP NP

*ti hej*

yet this(one)

DEM

She has had very bad pain (morning sickness) since being (pregnant) this one

S: M La

LC.91a

*mah ?əŋ*

that's right

V<sub>COP</sub>

That's right.

S: A

LC.91b

*pɪn*

if

ADV<sub>COND</sub>

*ca?*

possible

IRREALIS?

*lɔwh*

experience

V

*pa?*

you

NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>

*?u: pa?*

not you

NEG NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>

*kuat*

want

V

*kok*

eat

V

*?u: ?eh*

anything

NP

*lah*

eh

Q

If you have (morning sickness), you don't want to eat anything eh?

S: A

LC.93

*ca?      lbwh      haik      keh      te?*  
possible    experience    reach    pregnant    PRO.SUBJ  
IRREALIS    V                V                V                PRO.SUBJ  
I've had morning sickness since my pregnancy (started)

S: La

LC.94

*leih      cumtɔŋ      sajej    tʰɔ      kuat hua    ʔdaŋ    te?*  
go.down    ChomThong    day                feel.sick    still    PRO.SUBJ  
V            NP<sub>LOC</sub>            NP    DEM    V            ADV    PRO.SUBJ  
The day (I) went down to Chom Thong I still felt sick

S: La

LC.95

*mah    sam      keh      pa?    ʔɔ?*  
be    PROG    pregnant    you    eh  
V<sub>COP</sub>    TAM    V  
Yes during your pregnancy eh?

S: A

LC.96

*riaŋ      ʔbuj      lah*  
strong    somewhat    eh  
VADJ    ADV<sub>DEGREE</sub>    Q  
Pretty strong eh?

S: A

LC.97

*so?    luan      p<sup>h</sup>e?      hej*  
pain    very                react (TH)    this  
V        ADV<sub>DEGREE</sub>    V                DEM  
This (one) had very bad morning sickness

S: M La

LC.98a

*ʔaj ʔi nɔj ɲaʔ ʔaj teʔ*  
1SG little.one of 1SG PRO.SUBJ

NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NP

I, my little one,

S: A

LC.98b

*caʔ lbwh praman laʔɔj k<sup>h</sup>eʔ*  
possible experience approx. (TH) three months  
IRREALIS V QTY NUM NP  
had (morning sickness) for approximately three months

S: A

LC.98c

*haik tew praman laʔa k<sup>h</sup>e hɔwh*  
arrive not approx. (TH) two month more.than  
V NEG QTY NUM NP ADV  
(It) didn't come till approximately more than two months

S: A

LC.100

*ɲum ʔan sɔwm teʔ kam t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
tasty quickly food PRO.SUBJ after.that  
VADJ ADV<sub>MANNER</sub> NP PRO.SUBJ ADV  
My food was quickly tasty after that

S: A

LC.101

*paɪŋ k<sup>h</sup>eʔ hej cak fian sia | paɪŋ k<sup>h</sup>eʔ hej hew ʔɔʔ*  
four months this from (TH) improvement little | four months this go also?  
NUM NP DEM PP V QTY | NUM NP DEM V  
This four months (I felt) a little better. Four months (it started) going.

S: La

LC.102

<i>newm</i>	<i>ti?</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>e?</i>	<i>haik</i>	<i>paɪŋ</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>e?</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>
from	one	month	until	four	months	that
ADV	NUM	NP	V	NUM	NP	DEM

From month one till month four

S: La

LC.103

<i>ka</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>pa?</i>	<i>kuat</i>	<i>kok</i>	<i>kuat</i>	<i>sɔwm</i>	<i>tew</i>	<i>lah</i>
during	you	want	eat	want	eat.rice	not	eh	
ADV	NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>	V	V	V	V	NEG	Q	

During (that time) you didn't want to eat rice or anything eh.

S: A

*tew* is negating more than one verb here. 'Not want to eat, not want to eat rice'.

LC.104

<i>no?</i>	<i>la?awm</i>	<i>padaj</i>	<i>ʔɔ?</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>
drink	water	only	eh	I
V	NP <sub>OBJ</sub>	ADV		NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>

I could only drink water eh

S: La

VOS word order!

LC.105

<i>riaŋ</i>	<i>m<sup>h</sup>uj</i>	<i>p<sup>h</sup>e?</i>	<i>(TH)</i>	<i>pa?</i>
strong	somewhat	symptoms	your	
VADJ	ADV <sub>DEGREE</sub>	NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>		POSS

Your symptoms were pretty strong

S: A

LC.106

<i>k<sup>h</sup>anat</i>	<i>ʔaj</i>	<i>no?</i>	<i>nom</i>	<i>ʔenmam</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>	<i>la?</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>
that.time (TH)	I	drink	milk	Aenmam	that	for	me
ADV	NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>	V	NP <sub>OBJ</sub>	NP	DEM	PP	NP <sub>BEN</sub>

(During) that time I drank that Aenmam milk for me

S: La

LC.107

*ʔu: keh ʔo?*  
not able drink  
NEG V V

(I) wasn't able to drink (anything else)

S: La

LC.108

*səʔaw hɔ? lah*  
smelly also eh  
VADJ Q  
(It's) smelly also eh?

S: A

LC.109

*tɛ nom hej ta mah kuat k<sup>h</sup>a:w*  
but milk this so be tends.to (be smelly)  
CONJ NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> DEM V<sub>COP</sub>  
but milk tends to be smelly

S: A

LC.110

*ti jaŋ ʔu: ʔe kuat lɔwh ʔo? nom la? ʔəŋ*  
yet like not we want PAST drink milk for us  
ADV DEM IRREALIS NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> V ASP V NP<sub>OBJ</sub> PP NP<sub>BEN</sub>  
It's like this (because) we don't want to drink milk for ourselves

S: La

LC.111

*mah ʔəŋ ʔeh kiw lɔwh ʔəŋ ʔeh*  
that's.right eh because experience our eh  
V<sub>COP</sub> V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>

That's right eh. Because of our experience eh.

S: A

LC.112

*kɔw paʔ ʔu: paʔ keh kok ʔu:ʔeh joŋ*  
you not you able eat anything maybe  
NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> NEG NP V V NP irrealis  
You weren't able to eat much at all maybe

S: A

LC.113

*soʔ luan pin caʔ lɔwh paʔ jaŋ tʰɔ lah*  
pain very if possible experience you like that eh  
V ADV<sub>DEGREE</sub> ADV<sub>COND</sub> irrealis V NP DEM  
Morning sickness is pretty bad if that happens to you like that eh

S: A

LC.114

*hew kaʔoh kaʔeh ʔu: pa keh hew*  
go there here not you able go  
V PP PP irrealis NP V V  
You aren't able to get out or go anywhere

S: M La

LC.115

*cak sisip pɛd tʰɔ lia sisipsi ʔnɔŋ hɔʔ*  
from (TH) 48 (TH) that left.over (TH) 44 (TH) only also  
ADV NUM DEM PP NUM ADV  
(I) went from 48 (kilos) to 44 (kilos) only eh

S:

LC.116a

*puj pin ʰkiaŋ pa? suanma:k ?əŋ*  
 person if pregnant you usually (TH)  
 NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> ADV<sub>COND</sub> V NP DEM  
 Usually if someone is pregnant,

S: A

LC.116b

*hə'ŋ te? la? ri te? lah*  
 many people to big people eh  
 QTY PRO.SUBJ PP VADJ PRO.SUBJ  
 many people get bigger eh

S: A

LC.118

*kok jum sɔwm pa? jaŋ ?e?*  
 eat tasty eat you like us  
 V ADJ V NP NP  
 You eat tasty food like us??

S: A

LC.119

<i>kaj</i>	<i>ʔi</i>	<i>kaj</i>	<i>kaʔndo?</i>	<i>k<sup>h</sup>e</i>	<i>kaʔndo?</i>	<i>saʔŋaj</i>	<i>neh</i>	<i>ʔi nɔj</i>	<i>ja?</i>
have	already	have	how.many	month	how.many	day	eh	little.one	of
V	ASP	V	INT	NP	INT	NP	Q	NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>	PP

Have, already have how many months or days eh? This little one of yours.

S: A

Right dislocation of subject or just clarification by stating the subject after the sentence is finished?

LC.120

*kaj ti? ?at<sup>h</sup>it paj laʔa saŋaic la ?aj*

have one week and two days for me  
 V NUM NP CONJ NUM NP PP NP  
 Had (her) for one week and two days for me

S: La

LC.121

*kit wansaw lah*  
 born Saturday eh  
 V ADV<sub>TIME</sub> Q  
 (she was) born on Saturday eh

S: A

LC.122

*ti? ?atit paj la?a saŋaic*  
 one week and two day  
 NUM NP CONJ NUM NP  
 one week and two days

S: A

LC.123

*bamruŋ ?əŋ c<sup>h</sup>uaŋ hej*  
 fatten (TH) it time this  
 V 3SG DEM  
 It'll fatten up (during) this time

S: A

LC.124

<i>bamruŋ</i>	<i>pa?kɔw</i>	<i>te?</i>	<i>lah</i>		<i>maic</i>	<i>juh</i>	<i>?əŋ</i>	<i>la?awm</i>	<i>neŋ</i>	<i>pa?</i>
fatten (TH)	body	your	eh		good	do.make	it	water	breast	you



V                    NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>    POSS    Q    |    ADJ    V                    3SG    NP                    NP                    POSS

Your body will fatten eh. Good for making your milk.

S: A

This is an interesting inversion of *kɔw pa?* ‘2SG’ to *pa?kɔw te?* ‘your body’

LC.125

*mo? maic joŋ mo? ?əŋ*

suck good maybe suck her

V    ADJ    irrealis    V    NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>

Does she attach well? Her attachment?

S: A

LC.126

*maic*

good

ADJ

(she attaches) well

S: La

LC.127

*pokati                    ?əŋ    lah*

normal (TH) she eh

V<sub>EXISTENTIAL</sub>    NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>    Q

She is normal eh

S: A

LC.128

*fian                    kaj    la?    tuj*

improvement have to fat

V                    V    PP    ADJ

Improvement to getting fat

S: A

LC.129

*kaj*    *ʔmε*    *p<sup>hi</sup> liaŋ*    *ke?*

have another helper (TH) her

V    ADV    NP

have another helper - her (looking at grandmother)

S: A

LC.130

*kaj*    *sala*    *cuaj*    *nian*

have volunteer help look

V    NP    V    V

(You) have a volunteer help look (after the baby)

S: A

LC.131

*laʔaj*    *ʔaj*    *ʔaik*    *te?*

today I stay.at

ADV<sub>TIME</sub> NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> V PRO.SUBJ

Today I'll be here

S: M La

LC.132

*laʔaj*    *ʔnɔŋ*    *tə?*

today only eh

ADV<sub>TIME</sub> ADV Q

Only today eh?

S: A

LC.133

*hew loŋpoŋ ka? hɔ*

go Long Pong over.there

V NP<sub>LOC</sub> DEM

(I'm) going to Long Pong over there

S: M La

LC.134

*paih maŋkacaj ja? ?aj*

pick tomatoes for me

V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> PP NP

picking tomatoes for me

S: M La

LC.135

*ŋua tew joŋ*

fussy not maybe

V NEG irrealis

Not fussy maybe? (talking about the baby)

S: A

LC.136

*ŋua tew pin ?u? ce?*

fussy not if not wet

V NEG ADV<sub>COND</sub> irrealis VADJ

(She's) not fussy if (she's) not wet.

S: La

LC.137

<i>ma?sawm</i>	<i>?u</i>	<i>ce?</i>	<i>?ia</i>	<i>tew</i>	<i>jiam</i>	<i>?əŋ</i>
night.time	not	wet	have.get	not	cry	she
ADV <sub>TIME</sub>	irrealis	VADJ	V	NEG	V	DEM

At night (if she) isn't wet she doesn't cry

S: M La

LC.138a

<i>sa?eh</i>	<i>sam</i>	<i>ŋua</i>	<i>?əŋ</i>
tomorrow	will	fussy	she
ADV <sub>TIME</sub>	FUT	V	DEM

Tomorrow she will be fussy

S: M La

LC.138b

<i>c<sup>h</sup>it</i>	<i>vaksin</i>	<i>sa?eh</i>	<i>sam</i>	<i>sɔw</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>?əŋ</i>	<i>sia?</i>
inject	vaccine	tomorrow	will	hurt	for	her	a.little
V	NP	ADV <sub>TIME</sub>	TAM	V	PP	NP	ADV <sub>DEGREE</sub>

Inject vaccination tomorrow will hurt for her a little

S: M La

LC.139

<i>sɔw</i>	<i>sia</i>	<i>?eh</i>	<i>vaksin</i>	<i>hej</i>		<i>co?</i>	<i>ŋam</i>	<i>te?</i>	<i>?mɛ</i>
hurt	a.little	eh	vaccine			take	blood	her	also
V	ADV <sub>DEGREE</sub>	Q	NP	DEM		V	NP	PRO.SUBJ	ADV

Vaccinations do hurt a bit eh. (They'll) take her blood also

S: A

LC.140

*ʔinɔj naʔ ʔaj mah lɔwh paman hej*  
 little.one of mine be experience similar (TH) this  
 NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> PP POSS V<sub>COP</sub> V DEM  
 My little one had a similar experience to this

S: A

LC.141a

*coʔ lɔwh ʔəŋ bat kit*  
 take(blood) experienced she after born  
 V V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> ADV V

She had blood taken after being born,

S: A

*ʔəŋ* is the 3SG ‘she’ or the subject marker?

LC.141b

*paman tiʔ ʔatit hɔwh hej*  
 approx. (TH) one week more.than this  
 QTY NUM NP ADV DEM

approximately just after one week (old) this

S: A

LC.141c

*coʔ lɔwh tiʔ cuaŋ*  
 take(blood) experienced one time  
 V V NUM ADV

first time taking blood

S: A

LC.144

*səŋej lɔwh pi rɔŋ tʰɔh ʔuː moʔ neŋ*

jaundice experienced that.one first NEG suck breast  
 V V [REL NUM] DEM TAM V NP  
 (My) first one had jaundice (and) didn't attach well (to the breast)

S: A

LC.145

*bat puʃ tʰi sɔŋ tʰɔh ʔi moʔ luan mɛh*  
 arrive person number (TH) two (TH) already suck very eh  
 V [ ]NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> DEM ASP V ADV  
 (When) the second one arrived, (she) attached very well already eh

S: A

LC.146

*ʔuː ca tian laʔawm nɛŋ ʔaj ʔɔʔ*  
 not possible able water breast my eh  
 NEG irrealis? V [NP NP POSS]<sub>SUBJ</sub>  
 My breast milk wasn't enough eh

S: A

LC.147

*puʃ rɔŋ kuat moʔ ʔmat keh jaŋ hej*  
 person first want suck when birth like this  
 [NP NUM]<sub>SUBJ</sub> V V ADV V DEM  
 (My) first child wanted to attach from birth like this

S: A

LC.148

*ʔuː ti joŋ naʔ kaj nɛŋ ʔeʔ hɔ lah*  
 not yet know place have breast our also eh

NEG TAM V PP V NP POSS ADV

But (she) didn't yet know where our breast was eh!

S: A

(I think this is humorous as they laughed)

LC.149

*ta? ?u: lɔwh mo? man ?ɔ? la?awm nej*  
but not experience attach what water breast  
ADV NEG V V NP NP

But (they) don't have experience attaching it - breast milk

S: A

LC.150

*la?awm nej rɔŋ ?ah keh la?awm nej man mah ?əŋ ?ɔ?*  
water breast first called birth water breast what be it eh  
[NP NP ADV] V V NP NP Q V<sub>COP</sub> NP

What is it called – the first milk - birth milk eh?

S: A

LC.151

*la?awm nej hua saw pa? tə?*  
water breast head clean (NT) yours eh  
NP NP POSS Q

your head clean milk eh

S: M La

LC.152

*?u: pɔ maic te? joŋ*  
not enough good PRO.SUBJ maybe  
irrealis ADJ

not sure if that's good enough (calling it a Northern Thai name)

S: A

LC.153

<i>juəŋ</i>	<i>ʔe</i>	<i>mah</i>	<i>ʔah</i>	<i>keʔ</i>		<i>man</i>	<i>mah</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>	<i>ʔɔʔ</i>
village	our	be	calls	it		what	be	it	eh
NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>	POSS	V	V	NP <sub>OBJ</sub>		Q	V <sub>COP</sub>	NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>	Q

What does our village call it? What's it called?

S: A

LC.154

<i>laʔawm</i>	<i>neŋ</i>	<i>jaŋ</i>	<i>tʰɔ</i>	<i>tʰɔ</i>	<i>ʔɔʔ</i>
water	breast	like	that	that	eh
NP	NP		DEM	DEM	

milk like that eh

S: A

LC.155

<i>laʔawm</i>	<i>neŋ</i>	<i>səŋej</i>	<i>joŋ</i>		<i>mah</i>	<i>ʔəŋ</i>	<i>eh</i>
water	breast	yellow	maybe		be	it	eh
NP	NP	ADJ	V		V	NP	Q

Is it yellow breast milk? Is that it?

S: A

LC.156

<i>piʔ</i>	<i>səŋej</i>	<i>tʰɔh</i>	<i>ʔeh</i>
that.which	yellow	that	eh
REL	ADJ	DEM	Q

That yellow stuff eh?



S: M La

LC.157

*hej        ?u:        səŋej    lɔwh        laʔawm   neŋ*  
this(one) not        yellow    experience    water        breast  
DEM        irrealis    VADJ    V                NP        NP

This one did she have the yellow milk or not?

S: A

LC.158

*pi        səŋaj    tʰɔ        pi        maic*  
that.one    yellow    that    that.one    good  
REL        VADJ    DEM    REL        ADJ

that yellow (milk) is good stuff

S: M La

LC.159

*maic    ?ah    ke?        ?əŋ        maic    puŋ*  
good    call    they    it        good    people  
ADJ    V        NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>    NP<sub>OBJ</sub>    ADJ

They say that its good. Good for babies (people)

S: A

LC.160

*laʔawm   neŋ        ?akia    mah    ?əŋ    lah*  
water    breast    first    be        it        eh  
NP        NP        ADV    V<sub>COP</sub>    NP    Q

It's the first milk eh?

S: A

LC.161

*ʔu ti kuat ʔɔk hɔʔ mah tʰɔ*  
not yet want out also be that

S: A

LC.162

*ʔi rəm lɔwh dut teʔ ʔəŋ tɛ mah ʔu kuat ʔɔk*  
already start experience suck (TH) PRO.SUBJ she but be not want out  
its starting to happen when she sucks but is not (quite) out

S:

LC.163

*hej newm bək sah laʔawm neŋ ʔəŋ*  
this from compare water breast hers

S: M La

LC.164

*mah ʔmɛ pi tia tʰɔ ti taic ʔi sak*  
be only that.one little that quickly already full  
REL V

that little one is quickly already full

S: M La

LC.165

*ʔu ti ri lah ʔu ti ri kapɔʔ*  
not yet big eh not yet big stomach  
irrealis V NP

(she) isn't big yet eh – stomach isn't big yet

S: A

LC.166

*tia      ʔdaŋ   kɔw      tia      ʔdaŋ   kapɔʔ*  
 little   still   body   little   still   stomach  
 VADJ   ADV   NP      VADJ   ADV   NP  
 body is still small – stomach is still small

S: M La

LC.167

*hɔit      hewm   nɔʔ   ʔi      ʔait   newm   nɔʔ*  
 finished   bathing   eh   already   sleep   before   eh  
 (you) finished bathing eh and (you) already slept before that eh

S: M La

LC.168

*ʔia      ʔah      ʔuʔeh   ʔah*  
 have.get   call      anything   call  
 (idiom for a quiet baby)

S: M La

LC.169

*hew      liak   toʔ   kʰum      ʔdeɪŋ   puɟ   laʔej*  
 go      enter   in   spa      long   person   today  
 V      V      PP   NP<sub>LOC</sub>

(She) went into the spa long time today

S: M La

LC.170

<i>ʔam</i>	<i>liak</i>	<i>paʔ</i>	<i>kaʔ<sup>n</sup>doʔ</i>	<i>chuamɔŋ</i>	<i>nɛh</i>		<i>liak</i>	<i>toʔ</i>	<i>khum</i>	<i>t<sup>h</sup>oh</i>
Q	enter	you	how.many	hours	eh		enter	in	spa	that
Q	V	NP <sub>SUBJ</sub>	INT	NP	Q		V	PP	NP	DEM

How many hours did you go in eh? Enter into that spa?

S: A

LC.171

*ti chuaməŋ*

one hour

NUM N

One hour

S: La

LC.172

*oh pin ʔi mah mok kuat pə kuat kʰrəʔ paʔ ʔəŋ*

oh if already be just.this.amount want enough want enough you it

V V V NP

oh, if (you've) already had enough want to finish it (being in the spa)

S:

LC.173

*kʰrəʔ paʔ ʔəŋ hə lah*

enough you it also eh

It was enough for you too eh

S:

LC.174

*ʔi hət laʔəj cuəŋ newm ləʔaj saʔ liak kʰum teʔ*

already finished three times since today early enter spa her

PRO.SUBJ

She's already finished three times since early today – going into her spa

S: M La

LC.175

*məj ʔu ma ləwh pʰuaŋ teʔ to*

you (respect) neg 2SG or.not spa you eh

NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> irrealis V V? PRO.SUBJ Q

Did you do the spa or not?

S: A

LC.176

*ʔam kɛh ləwh pʰuaŋ teʔ ʔah | man taʔ ʔu kaj kuin*

How	able	experience	spa	PRO.SUBJ		since	neg	have	children
Q	V	V	NP	PRO.SUBJ	Q	ADV	irrealis	V	NP <sub>OBJ</sub>

How was I able to have a spa? Since (I) didn't have children.

S: M La

LC.177

*ʔo ʔa birt taʔ mə nɛ*  
oh khun Birt eh

What about Birt?

S: A

LC.178

<i>te mah kuin liaŋ ʔaj</i>		<i>newm mah tia ʔəŋ hɔʔ</i>
so be child adopt my		since be small he also
ADV V <sub>COP</sub> NP V POSS		ADV V <sub>COP</sub> ADJ NP <sub>SUBJ</sub> ADV

So (he) is my adopted child. Since he was small also

S: M La

LC.179

<i>kaj laʔa k<sup>h</sup>ej mah ʔəŋ kua səŋaj ʔnɔŋ ʔa birt t<sup>h</sup>oh</i>
have two months yes ten days only khun Birt that
V NUM NP NUM NP ADV NPROP DEM

Birt was only two months yes and ten days (old).

S: M La

Right dislocation of Birt

LC.180

*maʔ liaŋ ʔaj ʔəŋ kɔw*

mother adopt I his  
 [NP V] NP DEM NP<sub>OBJ</sub>  
 I (am) his adopted mother

S: M La

LC.181

*ʔia tew jɔŋ ʔaj ʔɔʔ*  
 have.get not know I eh  
 V NEG V NP<sub>SUBJ</sub>  
 I hadn't known that eh

S: A

LC.182

*ʔam mah pen ma ʔia ʔəŋ*  
 Q be who mother father his  
 V INT NP NP POSS  
 Who are his parents?

S: A

LC.183

*kaj juan newm hɔ ʔa ʔiket tʰɔ*  
 exist village Bo Pawaen over.there place Iket that  
 V NP<sub>LOC</sub> ? NPROP DEM

(They) were from Bo Pawaen village, over there at Iket's (Birt's sister)

S: M La

Right dislocation of new participant.

LC.184

*maʔ ʔəŋ piʔəpəŋ ʔa ʔaj bə mə ʔika tʰoh mə*  
 mother his wife of khun Bə is.cop Ika DEM is.cop

NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> POSS NP PP NP V

His mother the wife of khun Bə was Ika

S: M La

Right dislocation of new participant.

LC.185

*ʔi mah tʰɔ maʔ ʔəŋ*  
alread be that mother his  
V NP POSS

That's right (she's) his mother

S: La

LC.186

*ʔi pen ʔɔʔ kuin kʰreʔ ʔəŋ pi ri tʰɔh*  
who that child daughter hers person big that

Who is that? Her daughter – that big person (half-sister of Birt)

S: La

LC.187

*keh kiah saʔ ʔəŋ la ma ne marɔŋ ʔəŋ*  
able give ?? he to you eh back.then PRO  
V V NP PP NP Q

How is it that he was given to you? Way back then.

S: La

LC.188

*ʔu keh ʔu kiah ʔəŋ*  
not able not give him  
NEG V NEG V NP<sub>OBJ</sub>

(She) wasn't able to not give him (she had to)

S: M La

LC.189

*kamt<sup>h</sup> ma? ?əŋ mah jaŋ pi ?ah pa*  
after.that mother his be (female?) who told you(me)  
ADV NP<sub>SUBJ</sub> POSS V<sub>COP</sub> NP REL V NP

After that his mother was the one who told me

S: M La

LC.190

*te? ɲia? k<sup>h</sup>rɔ? ke? lah*  
but/then? marry again.new her eh  
Then she marry again eh

S: M La

LC.191

*piə ?a bət ma t<sup>h</sup>ɔ te? hu maŋ pote?*  
father khun Birt mother that PRO.SUBJ flirt with each.other

Birts father and mother flirted with each other

S: M La

LC.192

*marɔŋ mah jaŋ hej*  
back.then be like this

Back then it happened like this

S: M La

LC.193

<i>hu maŋ pote?</i>		<i>te? ri viak ?ika t<sup>h</sup>ɔ</i>
flirt with each.other		then bit stomach Ika that
V PP		



(They) flirted with each other. Then Ika got a big stomach.

S: M La

LC.194

*kamtʰɔʔaj tʰɔ te? hew tʰamɲan viaŋ*  
after.that man PRO.SUBJ go work Chiang Mai  
ADV NP DEM V V

After that the man he went to work in Chiang Mai

S: M La

LC.195

*tʰamɲan viaŋ ʔu: ca? ʔatia ʔmɛ kʰaŋ kʰaj te?*  
work Chiang Mai not possible return again after.that he  
Worked in Chiang Mai but he didn't return again after that

S: M La

LC.196

*te? jo? pi kʰrɔʔ te? hɔ?*  
so see person new he eh  
So he saw someone new eh

S: M La

LC.197

*pewh pi pʰraŋ tʰɔ hɔ mah jaŋ hej*  
discard that.one old DEM also be like this  
That old one (girlfriend) (he) discarded eh. Its like this.

S: M La

LC.198

*pewh mah ʔəŋ hɔ? lah*

discard that's right that eh  
That's right (He) discarded (her) eh

S: La

LC.199

*ʔu: ti tian ɲiaʔ ri viak ʔakia mah ɲaŋ hej*  
not yet return marry big stomach first be like this  
V V ADV

Not yet married and already pregnant – it's like that

S: M La

LC.200

*kamtʰɔ ʔah ʔaj bət ʔu: mah kuin teʔ ʔaj tʰɔ*  
after.that say khun Birt not be child my man that  
V PRO.SUBJ NP DEM

After that, that man said “Birt isn't my child.”

S: M La

Right dislocation of *ʔaj tʰɔ*.

LC.201

*padia kʰaj ka ʔəŋ ʔɔʔ*  
now behind time it eh

Now that was a long time ago eh

S: M La

LC.202

*ʔam mah lɔwh puɲ juan ʔe ʔah*  
Q be or.not person village our Q

Was he from our village or not?

S: A

*lɔwh* – ‘or not’.

LC.203

*kuin ta mi<sup>n</sup>dat t<sup>h</sup>ɔ mə<sup>?</sup> <sup>n</sup>kɔw<sup>?</sup>*  
child Mr Mindat that long.time.ago he

He is Mindat’s son

S: M La

LC.204

*padia kaj <sup>?</sup>daŋ ʔah*  
now exists still Q  
Is (he) still (alive) now?

S: A

LC.205

*ta mindat t<sup>h</sup>ɔh*  
Mr Mindat that  
My Mindat? (you mean)

S: M La

LC.206

*kaj kaj lampaŋ kanom ka<sup>?</sup> ʔəŋ joŋ hew la ʔəŋ joŋ*  
exists exists Lampang where place maybe go to there maybe  
Yes Yes Lampang is where. Maybe he went (somewhere else?)

S: M La

LC.207

*ɲia<sup>?</sup> juaŋ ka ha<sup>ʔ</sup>n*  
marry village place other  
V NP

(He) married (in) another village

S: M La

LC.208

*ləj            ʔaik      kahɔ    lah*

then (TH) stay.at there eh

Then (he) stayed there eh

S: A

LC.209

*puʔ          mu        sommi   tʰɔʔ   ʔɔʔ*

younger group Sommi that eh

Sommi is his younger brother eh

S: M La

*tʰɔʔ* with a new participant.

LC.210

*ʔoh   ʔah   puʔ        ʔəŋ   ʔu:   mah   kuin   teʔ   hɔʔ   lah*

oh say person he not be child my also eh

oh, to say that “that person(child) is not my child also” eh

S: A

LC.211

*spw   sain   luan   saməʔ   lah*

heartless very much eh

That’s totally heartless eh

S: A

LC.212

*ʔiah mu maj ʔəŋ kamtʰɔ lah*  
have.get group ours he after.that eh  
V

want him in our group (village) after that eh

S: A

LC.213

*ʔdɔ ʔəŋ la ʔaj maʔ kuat ʔəŋ*  
tell it to me grandmother his  
his grandmother told it (all this) to me

S: M La

Right dislocation of new subject.

LC.214

*kaj jaŋ mu kaʔewh tʰɔ kit rɔŋ jiaʔ ʔɔ*  
have like group yesterday that born hospital eh  
They had (him) like (that day) yesterday, born in hospital

S: M La

LC.215

*laʔai tʰɔ pʰot ʔan hew ʔdɔ ʔan la ʔaj hɔʔ*  
today that arrive quickly go tell quickly to me eh  
then the next day arrived and (they) quickly came and told (me) eh

S: M La

LC.216

*maj ʔia mah ʔəŋ kaʰdɔwʔ saŋaic mah ʔəŋ*  
you have.get be him how.many day be him  
You got him how many days (how many days till you got him)

S: La

LC.217

*ʔia newm rək kit ʔah na hɔ ʔah*

have.get from first born say eh that say

I said “I would take (him) from when first born” I said that

S: M La

LC.218

*kit jaŋ kaʔewh laʔaj doklɔŋ ʔan ʔaj ʔia*

born like yesterday today decide (TH) quickly I have.get

(He) was born like yesterday (and) today I quickly decided I'll have (him)

S: M La

LC.219

*kiah ʔaj lian laʔa k<sup>h</sup>ej paj kua səŋaj*

give me look.after two months and ten days

V NP

He was given to me to look after two months and ten days

S: M La

LC.220

*cewp caŋwaʔ mah juh puj cik mah t<sup>h</sup>ɔ ʔaʔ*

meet around.time be make people field be that eh

Met (received him) around when people were planting rice in their fields eh

S: M La

LC.221

*ʔdi ʔan nom hew ʔdua ʔəŋ la ʔəŋ hɔʔ*

buy quickly milk go send him to me eh

V NP V V NP

(I) bought milk and (they) came sent him to me eh

S: M La

LC.222

*ʔi ʔaik lɔwh maŋ maj k<sup>h</sup>e nɛ newm mah tia? ʔəŋ*  
already stay.at or.not with you here eh from be small he  
already stay with you here or not? from when he was small

S: A

LC.223

*pen*  
who  
Who?

S: M La

LC.224

*ʔaj bət t<sup>h</sup>ɔ ʔɔ?*  
*khun Birt that eh*  
Birt eh

S: A

LC.225

*ta? liaŋ ʔaj*  
so look.after I  
V NP  
So I adopted (him)

S: M La

LC.226

*ta? kiah ʔaj ma ʔəŋ liaŋ*  
so give.let me mother look.after  
V NP DEM V  
So his mother let me adopt (him)

S: M La

LC.227

*laʔa k<sup>h</sup>ej paj kua səŋaic ʔnɔŋ*  
two month and ten days *only*

two months and ten days only

S: M La

LC.228

*kit hɔʔ paj*  
think HORT you

You think about that

S: M La

LC.229

*kamt<sup>h</sup>ɔ kiah ma ʔəŋ moʔ ʔəŋ kamt<sup>h</sup>ɔ lah*  
*after.that give mother him? suck him after that eh*  
DEM?

After that his mother suckled (breast fed) him after that eh?

S: A

LC.230

*mɔʔ nom*  
suck milk (TH)  
suckle milk?

S: M La

LC.231

*mɔʔ tew maʔ teʔ*  
suck not mother PRO.SUBJ

His mother didn't suckle (him)

S: M La



LC.232

*ndi ʔaj nom tʰɔ lah*

buy I milk (TH) that eh

I bought that milk eh

S: M La

LC.233

*meici jaŋ hej tʰɔ*

Meiji brand this eh

This Meiji brand eh

S: M La

LC.234

*ri maŋ nom mɔj hej*

big with milk boy this

This boy grew up with milk

S: M La

Right dislocation of subject.

LC.235

*rak luan maj lɔwh lah*

love (TH) very you or.not eh

You love him a lot eh?

S: A

LC.236

*kɛh ʔu rak ʔəŋ*

able not love him

(I) couldn't but love him

S: M La

LC.237

*ta klaj chit luan pa*  
so intimate (TH) very you  
when you are so intimate

S: M La

LC.238

*ta? liaŋ ?aj newm mah tia? ?əŋ*  
so adopt I from be small him  
V NP

So I adopted him from when he was small

S: M La

LC.239

*?aj ?ia tew joŋ mah kuin liaŋ maj ?a?*  
I have.get not know be child adopt your eh  
I hadn't known (he) was your adopted child eh

S: A

LC.240

*kəh mah jaŋ man*  
able be how  
How would (you) be able (to know)

S: M La

LC.241

*tə jɔŋ ?əŋ hɔ? kɔw ?əŋ lah*  
but (TH) know him eh him eh  
V NP DEM

But he knows it eh? (Birt)

S: A

LC.242

*?a jɔŋ ?əŋ*  
so know he

He knows it

S: M La

LC.243

*kɛh ʔuː joŋ jaŋ man*  
able not know how

How could (he) not know?

S: M La

LC.244

*ti ʔi liaŋ ʔa maŋ*  
so already adopt  
So (you) adopted (him)

S: A

LC.245

*ʔah newm mah kət əŋ hɔ? lah*  
tell since be born him that eh  
told him since he was born eh

S: A

LC.246

*ʔah na rɛk kit ʔəŋ | liaŋ ʔaj əŋ ʔɔ?*  
tell time first (TH) born him | adopt you  
You told him from (when he was) first born - that you adopted (him)

S: A

LC.247

*ʔam mah lɔwh mah puŋ jaŋ nɛ mu maj*  
Q be or.not be relatives group your  
(polite)

Are you related (family group) or not?

S: A

LC.248

*mah tew*

be not

No

S: M La

LC.249

*ma mah tew ?ara? ?ato? pote?*

you be not older younger together

You not siblings?

S: A

LC.250

*mah tew ti jaŋ newm*

be not at.all like true

Not at all truly

S: M La

LC.251

*te? mah juan newm maŋ juan tiaŋ ?e juan kawian*

so be village Bo Luang and village Bo Sangae e! village Bo Pawaen

So (he) is (from) Bo Luang and Bo Sangae eh no Bo Pawaen

S: M La

LC.252

*sam mah kit jaŋ hej joŋ*

will be think like this maybe

Should think like this maybe

S: M La

LC.253

*ma? p̄ia ?ə ta j̄ia əŋ k<sup>h</sup>aj ka ?əŋ*  
mother father e grandfather grandmother his back time.ref that  
His mother and father eh (no) his grandmother and grandfather back then

S:

LC.254a

*kamt<sup>h</sup>ɔ̄ p̄in j̄ia k<sup>h</sup>rɔ̄w ma? hlat*  
after.that if marry again mother scared  
After that if (she) married again, the mother was scared

S: M La

LC.254b

*p̄ia? k<sup>h</sup>rɔ̄w ?əŋ ?u: k̄uat jo? əŋ mah jaŋ hej*  
father new hers not want see him be like this  
[                    ]<sub>SUBJ</sub>        V        V        NP<sub>OBJ</sub>  
her new husband wouldn't want to see him – it's like this

S: M La

LC.256

*sam p̄ewh ?mɛ əŋ hɔ? lah*  
will discard again her also eh  
(He) would also discard her again

S: M La

LC.257

*sam po? p̄uj t<sup>h</sup>ɔ̄ k̄uat ?ia ?əŋ*  
will request person that want have.get him  
                  V                    NP

Another person could request “We want him”

S: M La

LC.258

*ʔu: kiah ʔəŋ*  
not give him

(She) wouldn't give him

S: M La

LC.259

*ta kiah ʔəŋ la ɲaʔ ʔaj ʔnɔŋ pa joŋ ʔaʔ*  
so give she to place my only you know eh  
So, she gave (him) to my place only – you know eh

S: M La

LC.260

*caj di luan ma*  
heart (TH) good (TH) very you  
You (are) a very good person

S: A

LC.261

*pian luan kun la ma padia nian ma la*  
is very beneficial to you now look.after you eh

That's very beneficial to you now – (Birt) looks after you eh

S: A

LC.262

*caʔ joŋ tew jaŋ ʔaj*  
irrealis know not like I

I'm not so sure

S: M La

LC.263

*pumiʔmak maŋ ʔaj bət maʔtiw ʔəŋ*

lots.of.trouble with I Birt very.small him

I've had lots of trouble with Birt (since) he was very small

S: M La

LC.264

*ta ko jiam*

so often cried

I cried so often!

S: M La

## APPENDIX B

### BOY DOG FROG STORY

A wordless storybook told by Birt. Recorded mid 2012.

BDF.1a

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? ?amaj klɔm pi? hew sa?wiŋ <sup>m</sup>bain kat<sup>h</sup>aŋ*  
child male carry on shoulder take net hold bucket  
A boy walking carrying a net on his shoulder, holding a bucket

BDF.1b

*kaj sɔ? ?ia te? k<sup>h</sup>riap k<sup>h</sup>an k<sup>h</sup>aih*  
have dog of PRO.SUBJ follow behind  
with his dog following behind

BDF.1c

*hew p<sup>h</sup>ɔt niŋ tuŋ ti? tɔhw kanai p<sup>h</sup>e?*  
go arrive at pond one place inside forest  
is going to a pond at a place in the forest

BDF.2

*sɔ? ?ia ?əŋ ɲewm <sup>n</sup>giap tuŋ caj tiap te?*  
dog of his sit next to pond scratch fleas PRO.SUBJ  
His dog sat down on the edge of the pond scratching its fleas

BDF.3

*coŋ <sup>n</sup>giap tuŋ jo? kop ɲewm niŋ hla? buɔ*  
stand next to pond see frog sit on leaf lillie  
(The boy) stood next to the pond (and) saw a frog sitting on a lillie pad



BDF.4a

*m̥bain pi? tɔ sawiŋ te?*  
hold v.chain run net his  
holding his net he ran,

BDF.4b

*sɔ? ʔia ʔəŋ tɔ lɔwh mia ʔəŋ*  
dog of his run was with 3SG  
his dog ran with him

BDF.5

*ʔah sam m̥ɔak kop pi? ʔaik to? tuŋ*  
say FUT catch frog REL stay.at in pond  
he says “I’ll catch the frog that is in the pond”

BDF.6a

*wat p<sup>h</sup>ɔt niŋ tuŋ sandɔw miah kak k<sup>h</sup>ɔw sa?ɔh*  
when reach at pond trip with branch tree dry  
when (he) reached the pond (he) tripped on a dry tree branch

BDF.6b

*lak loŋ lak lede? kam sɔ? kam pui*  
head.over.heels both dog both person  
Both the boy and the dog went head over heels

BDF.6c

*səwm kain te? rai to? tuŋ*  
submerge head PRO.SUBJ fall at pond  
falling head first into the pond.

BDF.7a

*wat sap<sup>h</sup>lo: na: te? krataŋ cewp kain*  
when emerge face PRO.SUBJ bucket wear head  
when his face emerged the bucket was on his head

BDF.7b

*ˈda: nian miah kop tʰɔ*  
look.eye.to.eye see with frog that  
(and he was) eye to eye with the frog

BDF.8a

*wat na: ɱoak kop kop paʔtiat ʔatcua ʔəŋ*  
about.to catch frog frog jump past 3SG  
(he) was about to catch the frog, (but) the frog jumped past (him)

BDF.8b

*hew pot niŋ kak kʰɔw saʔɔh*  
go arrive at branch tree dry  
(and) landed on a dry tree branch

BDF.9

*kaˈdbwʔ kʰriap piʔ ɱoak kop*  
child follow V chain catch frog  
the boy followed to catch the frog

BDF.10

*coh sɔʔ ʔia teʔ ʔɔm meh hew tiʔ luaŋ*  
tell dog of PRO.SUBJ another.way go each.way  
(he) told his dog to go the other way

BDF.11

*sam hew tak ʔəŋ tiʔ pui tiʔ luaŋ*  
FUT go catch it one person one way  
we will catch it, each going a different way

BDF.12

*wat dak ʔəŋ ti pui tiʔ luaŋ pʰɔt la kop tʰɔh*  
when sneak up 3PL each person each way arrived at frog DEM  
When they had both sneaked up from different directions, they reached the frog

BDF.13

*sɔʔ bəp ɲɔək kop*

dog leap catch frog

The dog leaped to catch the frog

BDF.14a

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ wat saʔwiŋ ʔia te sam wat cewp kop t<sup>h</sup>ɔh*

child when swing of PRO.SUBJ FUT when catch frog DEM

The child, when his net was about to catch the frog,

BDF.14b

*kop paʔtiat*

frog jump

the frog jumped

BDF.14c

*hew cewp sɔʔ ʔia teʔ ʔiəh*

go catch dog his instead

(and he) caught his dog instead

BDF.15

*kop paʔtiat liak toʔ tuŋ hew pot niŋ samɔw*

frog jump enter into pond go arrive at rock

The frog jumped into the pond and went to a rock

BDF.16

*saʔwiŋ cewp sɔʔ ʔia teʔ t<sup>h</sup>uŋ t<sup>h</sup>eŋ*

swing catch dog his hang.down

The net caught his dog - hanging down

BDF.17a

*wat ʔuː ca piŋ kop ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ ʔah la kop t<sup>h</sup>ɔh*

when NEG possible able frog child speak to frog DEM

When he wasn't able (to catch the frog), the child spoke to the frog

BDF.17b

*laʔa laʔj saʔɲai saʔeh teʔ*  
two three day another day  
“two or three days or another day,

BDF.17c

*sam hew ɲək ʔmɛ pajʔ tiʔ lɔp*  
FUT come catch again 2SG one time  
“(I) will come to catch you again”

BDF.18

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ miah sɔʔ ʔajɲ*  
child and dog return home  
The boy and the dog returned home

BDF.19a

*kop ɲewm nian ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ ʔajɲ*  
frog sit look child return  
The frog sat looking (at) the boy returning home

BDF.19b

*taɲ laʔa: teʔ miah sɔʔ ʔia teʔ*  
all two PRO.SUBJ with dog poss. PRO.SUBJ  
both of them with his dog

BDF.20

*kop ʔu: kaj piʔɲew ʔaik ʔnɔɲ to tuɲ ɲɔm luan laɲ*  
frog NEG. have friend there alone in/at pond lonely intensifier  
The frog didn't have a friend he was lonely there in the pond all alone lonely

BDF.21

*laj kit kuat k<sup>h</sup>riap ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ miah sɔʔ t<sup>h</sup>ɔh*  
then (Thai) think want to follow child and dog DEM  
Then (the frog) thought "(I) want to follow the child and that dog"

BDF.22

*ʔjo k<sup>h</sup>rəm cuaŋ miah laʔa: k<sup>h</sup>riap taəm ɲia ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ*  
see prints foot with two follow way house child

(the frog) saw both sets of footprints (and) followed the way to the child's house

BDF.23a

*wat p<sup>h</sup>ot ɲiaʔ ɲa ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ*

when arrived house of child

when he arrived at the child's house

BDF.23b

*ʔjoʔ ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ miah sɔʔ kamləŋ hewm teʔ toʔ ʔŋ*  
see child and dog progrsve. bathing Reflex. in bath

he saw the boy and the dog washing themselves in a bath

BDF.24

*kop ɲiah*

frog smile

the frog smiled

BDF.25

*ka<sup>n</sup>dɔwʔ miah sɔʔ bəp*  
child and dog leap

The child and dog leapt (for joy)

BDF.26

*hew laʔ miah laʔa: to maɪh*  
go to with two in bath

(the frog) went to (be) with the two in the bath

BDF.27

*laʔɔj pen piŋew poʔ teʔ*

three is.are (TH) friends RECIP PRO.SUBJ

All three were friends together

## APPENDIX C

### TIGER AND ELEPHANT STORY

Tiger and Elephant story told by Ta Saai from Ban Khun.

ET.1

*kaj saŋ ti? ʔawia ti? him juaŋ tho*  
have.exist elephant one tiger one close village DEM  
Close to a village there was an elephant and a tiger.

ET.2

*k<sup>h</sup>ɛŋ poʔte? k<sup>h</sup>ɛŋ ʔamnat te?*  
challenge each.other challenge power PRO.SUBJ  
They challenged each other to see who was more powerful

ET.3

*saŋ ʔah te? ri?*  
Elephant said PRO.SUBJ big  
The elephant said of himself “I’m big”

ET.4

*ʔawia ʔah te? puŋ hlat ta? te?*  
tiger said PRO.SUBJ people scared of me  
The Tiger said of himself, “People are scared of me”

ET.5

*saŋ ʔah puŋ hlat ta? te?*  
elephant said people scared of me  
The elephant said “People are scared of me”

ET.6

*kam tʰɔ ʔah ʔawia ʔəŋ*  
after that said tiger SUBJ.MRK  
After that the Tiger said

ET.7

*sahaj sahaj te? ri? pa?*  
friend friend PRO.SUBJ? big 2SG  
“My Friend, my friend you are big ”

ET.8

*laʔiak ʔakia na*  
shout first ok  
“(you) shout first ok”

ET.9

*kuak saŋ ʔa? kuak saŋ*  
roared elephant and roared elephant  
The elephant roared and roared

ET.10

*puj tɔ pi? hew nian tuk so? te?*  
people ran v.chain go look all of them  
People ran to see – all of them.

ET.11

*ʔuː hlat niŋ puʃ hlat tew ta saŋ*  
weren't scared at.all people scared NEG of elephant  
But weren't scared at all. The people weren't scared of the elephant.

ET.12a

*kam tʰɔ ʔə hɔit paj*  
after.that finished he  
After that he finished (roaring)

ET.12b

*puj hɔit nian paj*  
people finished looking him  
The people stopped looking at him.

ET.13

*ʔak<sup>h</sup>u ʔmɛ ʔaj laʔ paʔ ʔaj ʔah ʔawia ʔəŋ*  
roar another I to you mine said tiger SUBJ.MRK  
“I’ll roar another (time and compare) yours with mine” said the tiger.

ET.14

*bat ʔawia ʔak<sup>h</sup>u jaŋ hej*  
after tiger roar like this  
After that the tiger roared like this

ET.15

*puj tɔ keʔ<sup>n</sup>kaʔ*  
people ran everywhere  
People ran everywhere

ET.16

*caʔ joʔ tew puʔ*  
possible see NEG person  
(You) couldn’t see anyone.

ET.17

*ʔaw kan saŋ*  
oh lost elephant  
Oh! The elephant lost.

ET.18

*nat laʔpoʔ teʔ ʔa:leh saŋaj ʔaleh sewm*  
appointment together seven days seven nights  
(They) agreed to meet in seven days and seven nights time.



ET.19

*ʔaik ta? ηuat tʰɔh saŋ tʰɔ jiam*  
be.at at stream DEM elephant DEM weep  
At a stream the elephant was weeping

ET.20

*pɔ pi pat ηuat tia? tʰɔ*  
enough that flow stream small DEM  
Enough that the small stream flowed

ET.21

*krataj tiaŋ kam tʰɔ*  
rabbit cross after.that  
A rabbit crossed (the stream) after that

ET.22

*bat tiaŋ jo? laʔawm ηuat tia?*  
when cross saw water stream small  
When (it) crossed (it) saw a small stream of water

ET.23

*kʰaj kaŋ kəj tew pat te?*  
long time ever (TH) not flow it  
“For a long time it has never flowed,

ET.24

*peh laʔawm karej*  
but water there  
but (there is) water here”

ET.25

*ʔaik tam ʔaik te? ta? pat samə? laʔaj*  
what has caused this? to flow start today?  
“What has caused this to start flowing today?”

ET.26

*ʔako nian nah ʔah kataj ʔəŋ*  
follow look EXCLM said rabbit DEM  
“I’ll follow this and see” said the rabbit

ET.27a

*miat ʔako nian*  
after follow look  
After following to look

ET.27b

*əə ʔbra ʔam mah saŋ jiam*  
oh sneak Q be elephant crying  
(it) exclaimed “Oh, have I snuck up on a crying elephant?”

ET.28

*sahaj sahaj man pi juh paʔ kaʔrɔj*  
friend friend what REL do.make 2SG there  
“Friend, friend, what are you doing there?”

ET.29

*p<sup>h</sup>a t<sup>h</sup>a nan laʔ ʔawia*  
fight with tiger  
“I fought with the tiger”

ET.30

*k<sup>h</sup>eŋ poʔ teʔ maŋ ʔawia can paʔ ʔawia*  
challenge together with tiger lost to tiger  
“I had a competition with the tiger and lost”

ET.31

*ʔaleh saŋaj ʔaleh sewm sam ʔainj kok paj*  
seven day seven night will return eat me  
“7 days and 7 nights (he) will return and eat me”

ET.32

*can te?            ?aj campen kiah        ?awia kok te?*  
lost PRO.SUBJ 1SG have.to give.let tiger eat me  
“I lost (so) I have to let the tiger eat me!”

ET.33

*kando?        saŋaj ?mε        sahaj*  
how.many day more friend  
“How many days are left friend?”

ET.34

*sa?eh*  
tomorrow  
“tomorrow”

ET.35

*?ə        ?dewm pu        ?ɔ? hew pɔ        ?awpit*  
oh tonight later eh go ask sticky.rice  
“Oh! Later tonight eh, go and ask for sticky rice”

ET.36a

*kiah puŋ        to juan        hej*  
have people in village this  
“Have the people in this village,

ET.36b

*huan        ?awp pit        la? pa?        ?aw ti?        ?ahuan*  
steam sticky.rice for you me one pot  
steam some sticky rice for you and me one pot”

ET.37

*<sup>m</sup>broh        to        bɔ*  
pound in mortar  
“Pound it in a mortar”

ET.38

*krataj hiaŋ ɔʔ*

rabbit smart eh

The rabbit is smart eh

ET.39

*kam t<sup>h</sup>ɔh ʔaic karɔj paj*

after.that sleep there 2SG

“After that you sleep here”

ET.40

*miat haik saŋaj t<sup>h</sup>ɔ ʔbroh ʔəŋ*

when reach day DEM pound it

“When the day comes pound it”

ET.41

*ləwp ʔawp pit t<sup>h</sup>ɔ niŋ kaiŋ*

cover sticky.rice DEM on head

“The sickly rice covers your head”

ET.42

*nian jaŋ man samɔŋ saŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*

look how brain elephant DEM

“How elephant’s brains look”

ET.43

*p<sup>h</sup>ia ʔawia ʔmat haik tam nat*

come tiger when reach follow appointment

The tiger came when the appointed time arrived

ET.44

*kam mɛ piʔ joʔ ʔawia jaŋ hej*

after.that REL see tiger like this

After that the tiger saw something like this

ET.45

*jiəŋ ʔan ʔawp pit teʔ*  
pull quickly sticky.rice PRO.SUBJ  
(The rabbit) quickly pulling the sticky rice

ET.46

*hej jum saŋ hej*  
this dead elephant this  
“This is a dead elephant this one”

ET.47

*kok ʔaj samɔŋ jum luan*  
eat 1SG brain tasty very  
“I’m eating its brain – its very tasty!”

ET.48

*pi peh samɔŋ saŋ ʔɔh*  
REL brain elephant eh  
“This elephant brain eh”

ET.49

*ʔəj ʔaj nɔwh ʔaj tiʔ kok*  
oh I put I yet eat  
“Oh! I put (it here), but I (haven’t) eaten it yet.”

ET.50

*kok jaʔ saŋ jaʔ ʔaj ka*  
eat of elephant of my first  
“(He is) eating my elephant before me.”

ET.51

*mɛ ʔawia*  
poor tiger  
The poor tiger

ET.52

*saŋ        ʔaiŋ    haik    padia*

elephant return reach now

the elephant is still here now

## APPENDIX D

### HOW THE TIGER GOT ITS STRIPES STORY

Told by Ta Saai from Ban Khun. Ta Saai is 70 years old and speaks both Eastern Lawa and Northern Thai.

TS.1a

*puih plɔŋ sam juh muŋ te? niŋ ʔawia tʰɔ*  
carry.on.back grass.roofing FUT make roof PRO.SUBJ place tiger DEM  
The tiger was carrying grass roofing on its back to make a roof at its place

TS.2

*tʰɔ jo? kataj tʰɔ*  
then saw a rabbit DEM  
Then (it) saw a rabbit

TS.3

*man pi? puih pa?*  
what REL carry you  
What are you carrying?

TS.4

*puih plɔŋ*  
carrying grass.roofing  
(I'm) carrying grass roofing

TS.5

*ʔə hɔ? somaiŋ luan te? ʔaw*  
oh also tired very PRO.SUBJ 1SG  
Oh I'm also very tired

TS.6

*pok pa? ?u: pian ?ah*  
ride 2SG NEG able Q  
Couldn't I ride on you?

TS.7

*pian pian pok "kɔ ?aw k<sup>h</sup>ej*  
able able ride back 1SG here  
(you) can (you) can, ride here on my back

TS.8

*mɔŋ doih ?andɛh*  
hear sound flint  
hear sound of flint

TS.9

*tih ?andɛh ca tɛk tɛk tɛk*  
strike flint possible tek tek tek  
strike the flint, tak tak tak

TS.10

*man pi juh pa? "kɔ ?aw*  
what that.which doing? you back 1SG  
What are you doing - on my back?

TS.11

*kiat piang te? huŋhian sata? te?*  
bite teeth my wave tail my  
(I'm) biting my teeth and waving my tail

TS.12

*tih ?andɛh miah tok pop*  
strike flint and lit pop  
(It) struck the flint and it lit - pop



TS.13

*hq? plɔŋ tʰɔ*  
burn roofing DEM  
The roofing ignited

TS.14

*patiat kataj*  
jump rabbit  
the rabbit jumped (off)

TS.15

*?awia tʰɔ laj kam tʰɔ ha ŋɔ tʰɔ ?əŋ*  
the tiger DEM stripes after.that burn fire DEM 3SG  
The Tiger was striped after that. The fire burnt it.

TS.16

*pian ?awia laj*  
is Tigers stripes  
That is how the Tiger got its stripes

This story starts again here.

TS.17

*puih plɔŋ ?awia tʰɔ*  
carry grass roof tiger DEM  
The tiger was carrying grass roofing

TS.18

*puih plɔŋ sam juh muŋ ja?aic te? niŋ*  
carry grass roof FUT do.make roof bed PRO.SUBJ place  
Carrying grass roofing to make a roof over its bed

TS.19

*jo? pi? kataj tʰɔ*  
see that rabbit DEM  
A rabbit saw that

TS.20

*ooh man pi? puih pa? saʔhaj*  
oh what REL carry you friend  
Oh what are you carrying friend? (Rabbit speaking)

TS.21

*puih plɔŋ*  
carry roof.grass  
(I'm) carrying roofing

TS.22

*juh pa? man niŋ*  
make 2SG what place  
What are you going to make there?

TS.23

*juh muŋ jaʔaic te? niŋ*  
make roof bed PRO.SUBJ place  
(I'm) going to make a roof at the place I sleep

TS.24

*ə soʔmain luan huak mə hej*  
oh tired very climb mountain this  
oh (I) am very tired - climbing this mountain

TS.25

*pɔ ʔah newm plɔŋ pa? pian ʔah*  
request say to sit roof 2SG can Q  
Please can (I) sit on your roofing?

TS.26

*pian pian newm ʔkɔ ʔaj kʰej*  
can can sit back 1SG here  
(you) can (you) can - sit on my back here

TS.27

*jnewm jaŋ hej*  
sat down like this  
(the rabbit) sat down like this

TS.28

*teh ʔande - tɛk tɛk*  
strike flint - tak tak  
struck a flint – tak rak

TS.29

*man pi juh pa? sahaj*  
what that do.make 2SG friend  
What are you doing friend?

TS.30

*kiat pian huŋ hiaŋ sata? te? ho?*  
biting teeth waving tail my also  
(I'm) biting my teeth and also waving my tail

TS.31

*tɛk tɛk*  
tak tak  
(sound of flint)

TS.32

*man pi? juh pa?*  
what are doing you  
What are you doing?

TS.33

*kiat pian te? oh*  
biting teeth PRO.SUBJ  
(I'm) biting my teeth

TS.34

*tɛk tɛk*

tak tak

(sound of flint)

TS.35

*tɔk*

(sound of ignition)

(ignition)

TS.36

*kam tʰɔ haʔ plɔŋ tʰɔ*

after that burn roof DEM

After that the roofing burns

TS.37

*tewh kataj*

flee rabbit

the rabbit flees

TS.38

*?awia tɔ huak mɔ hɔ*

tiger ran up mountain that

The tiger ran up the mountain

TS.39

*oh tɔ leih to ŋuat*

oh run down to stream

Oh (he) should run down to the stream

TS.40

*tɔ leih to ŋuat tɔ leih to ŋuat tʰɔ*

run down to stream run down to stream there

run down to the stream, run down to the stream

TS.41

*tɔ leih to ŋuat*  
ran down to stream  
(The tiger) ran down to the stream

TS.42

*kai tʰɔ pʰle ʔəŋ*  
wind DEM blow it (fire)  
The wind blew it (the fire) (stoked the fire)

TS.43

*pʰle ʔəŋ ha awia*  
blow it burn tiger  
(the wind) blew it (and) burnt the tiger.

TS.44

*laj səʔ haik padia*  
stripe ??? till nowadays  
it has stripes even until today

TS.45

*laj newm ʔawia tʰɔ*  
stripe true tiger DEM  
The tiger was truly striped

## APPENDIX E

### RAINSTORM STORY

A wordless storybook told by Birt (28 years old) from Bo Luang. Aug 2012.  
Recorded and transcribed by Greg Blok.

R.1a

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? ʔamaj cəŋ po? niŋ pəŋ*  
child male stand next to at window

A boy stands next to a window,

R.1b

*saŋkɔ: nian ʔɛ ʔək kanək pəŋ*  
peer look rain out outside window  
staring at the rain outside the window

R.2

*tia? ʔu: jəŋ pi juh te?*  
bored NEG know REL do himself  
(he) was bored (and) didn't know what to do with himself

R.3

*kue kue teih bən to? kanaj ɲia? ʔia te?*  
softly.gently softly.gently kick ball in inside house POSS his  
(He) carefully kicked a ball around inside his house

R.4a

*teih paj teih ma bən ja ʔəŋ*  
kick go kick come ball of his  
(He) kicked his ball around

R.4b

*rəi pəŋ mak maew liak ʔgləwm taji:*  
fall stairs roll enter under chair  
(it) fell down the stairs and rolled under a chair

R.5

*ləj pək ʔgləwm taji: sam ʔdi bən ʔia te?*  
then reach under chair ASP get ball of his  
then (he) reached under the chair to get his ball

R.6

*wat pək ʔəŋ taic ʔu: mah haik*  
when reach 3SG arm not be enough  
when he reached for it, (his) arm was not long enough

R.7

*wat sawp pa pia bən ʔia te? cawp kuncɛ: ti? tək*  
when try.find feel.around ball of his found key one CLF  
when (he) tried to find it (he) felt around for his ball and found a key

R.8

*ɲɔik ʔu: jəŋ mah kuncɛ man*  
confused not know be key what  
confused (he) didn't know what the key was for

R.9

*ləj kit ləŋ hew pət ʔu: ʔeih to? kanaj ɲia? ʔia te?*  
then think try go open things at inside house of his  
Then (he) thought "I'll go and try opening things in the house"

R.10

*ləŋ pət hip tia? ʔu: pin*  
try open box small NEG able  
(He) tried opening a small box, but (he) wasn't able to

R.11

*lɔŋ pət tu: ?u: pɪn*  
try open cupboard NEG able

(He) tried opening a cupboard, but wasn't able to

R.12

*lɔŋ pət kɔŋ kep viak ?u: pɪn*  
try open box store insects NEG able

(he) tried opening a box that stored insects, but wasn't able to

R.13

*lɔŋ pət ?awia? ?u: pɪn*  
try open door NEG able

(he) tried opening a door, but wasn't able to

R.14

*hew cawp hit ri? p<sup>h</sup>rain ti? bew*  
go find casket big old one CLF

(He) went and found a big old casket

R15

*ləj lɔŋ kit sam pət*  
then try think FUT open  
then (he) thought "will it open?"

R.16

*wat pət pɪn ?əŋ*  
when open able it  
when (he) tried opening it he was able!

R.17

*wat pət hit t<sup>h</sup>ɔ ?ɔk cawp poŋ ka?naj*  
when open casket DEM out find ladder inside  
When the casket was opened (he) found a ladder inside



R.18

*kaj to? tɔw? leih ʔəŋ*  
have.exist hole down it  
It had a hole going down

R.19

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? lɔŋ leih tam poŋ to? kanaj hit*  
boy try down follow ladder in inside casket  
The boy started down the ladder inside the casket

R.20

*wat p<sup>h</sup>ɔt cuəŋ poŋ cewp to? tɔw k<sup>h</sup>ra?*  
when COMPL foot ladder find hole path.road  
When (he) arrived at the base of the ladder, (he) found a tunnel

R.21

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? lɔŋ kit sam hew ʔu: hew*  
boy try think FUT go not go  
The boy thought “Should I go or not?”

R.22

*teŋ ʔia ʔap<sup>h</sup>awm te? hew hew taŋ k<sup>h</sup>aj k<sup>h</sup>ra?*  
a.while decide PRO.SUBJ go go follow path.road  
After a while (he) decided to go down the path.

R.23

*hew paj hew ma ʔu: ti? p<sup>h</sup>ot lɔp*  
walk.go.walk.come not one finish round  
After walking for ages (he) didn't even get to the end

R.24

*lɔŋ k<sup>h</sup>et tɔ*  
try not.fully run  
(he) tried jogging

R.25

*wat tɔ newm tɔ newm cawp ʔawia tiʔ ban*  
when run only run only find door one CLF  
When (he) had run and run, (he) found a door.

R.26

*kandɔʔ lɔŋ pɔh ʔawia wat pɔh ʔəŋ*  
boy try open door when open it  
The boy tried opening the door and it opened!

R.27

*kanaj hɔŋ kaj pɔŋ ʔəŋ*  
inside room is.exists stairs S.F.  
Inside the room was some stairs

R.28

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ lɔŋ huak tam pɔŋ toʔ kanaj hɔŋ*  
child try climb follow stairs in inside room  
The boy tried climbing up the stairs that were inside the room

R.29

*puit pɔŋ kaj cɔŋ huak ʔəŋ*  
top stair is.exists hatch climb S.F.  
At the top of the stairs was a hatch to climb through

R.30

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbwʔ pət cɔŋ huak niŋ puit pɔŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔh*  
child open hatch climb to top stairs that  
The boy opened the hatch to climb to the top of the stairs

R.31

*wat ʔɔk p<sup>h</sup>aʔ to tɔw cɔŋ ɲiaʔ ʔɔk teʔ*  
when out from hole stand smile out PRO.SUBJ  
When (he) came out from the hole, (he) stood there smiling to himself

R.32

*hew pot niŋ puit hɔ pa p<sup>h</sup>a k<sup>h</sup>aŋ*  
go arrive at top lighthouse

(He) had arrived at the top of a lighthouse!

R.33

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? cɔŋ nian rɔp te? jo? kɔ? ti? tia? ti? kɔ?*  
child stand look around himself see island one small one CLF

The boy stood looking around (and) saw a small island.

R.34

*ja? ʔu: ti? jɔŋ pi? mah*  
place NEG yet know REL be

A place (he) didn't know

R.35a

*wat meŋkeh ʔəŋ k<sup>h</sup>aj ʔia te?*  
when look.around 3SG behind of his

When he looked around behind it,

R.35b

*kaj ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? laʔɔj puj miah sɔ? te?*  
is.have child three Clf. and dog POSS

there were three children and a dog

R.36a

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? laʔɔj puj pa ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? pi? p<sup>h</sup>iat ʔnɔŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
child three Clf. take child who.came alone that

The three children took the child who came alone

R.36b

*ʔain sɔm ʔia? ʔia te?*  
return eat house theirs

and returned to eat at their house.

R.37a

*wat hɔit sɔm pa pote? ?ɔk laha? niŋ mbrɔk*  
when finish eat take together out play in yard  
When (they) finished eating, (they) went out together to play in the yard

R.37b

*na ɲia? ?ia te?*  
front house of theirs  
in front of their house

R.38

*hew len klaŋ miah pote? taŋ ?u: te?*  
go play kite and together all.of.them  
(They) went and played with a kite together

R.39

*wat hɔit len klaŋ*  
when finish play kite  
When (they) finished playing with the kite,

R.39

*pa pote? hew juh pasat ɲait*  
take together go make castle sand  
(they) went together to make a sand castle.

R.40

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? ti? puŋ ?iah pɛ? sa?ŋa: ci? saŋaic*  
child one CLF wear t-shirt green point.at sun  
A child wearing a green t-shirt, pointed at the sun.

R.41

*la? pote? ?i: pu pa pote? ?aiŋ*  
to (all) together already night take together return  
(He said) to all of them, “It is already night and they needed to return (home)”

R.42

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? taŋ paɪŋ pa pote? ʔaɪŋ niŋ hɔ pa p<sup>h</sup>a khaŋ*  
child all.four take together return to lighthouse  
All four of the children went together back to the lighthouse.

R.43

*ʔi: lawəj wat huak niŋ ka?duaŋ*  
already dusk when climb PP top  
It was already dusk when (they) climbed up top

R.44

*ʔi rəm fiak te?*  
already start dark PRO.SUBJ  
It was already starting to get dark

R.45

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? ti? pui cɔh ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? p<sup>h</sup>iat ʔnɔŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ lɔŋ pət ŋɔ*  
child one CLF invite child arrive alone Dem. try switch.on light  
One of the kids invited the child who arrived alone to try switching on the light

R.46

*wat pət ŋɔ ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? pi? p<sup>h</sup>iat ʔnɔŋ mait ʔaphawm*  
when switch.on light child REL arrive alone happy  
When (he) switched the light on, the boy who arrived alone was happy

R.47

*ʔu: kəj juh te? ʔəŋ ti? cuaŋ*  
NEG ever do him 3SG one time  
(He) had never done this before even once

R.48

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? p<sup>h</sup>i p<sup>h</sup>iat ʔnɔŋ t<sup>h</sup>ɔ pɔ ʔaɪŋ to? puŋew te?*  
child who came alone that request return from friend PRO.SUBJ  
The child who came alone, asked for his leave from his friends

R.49

*leih niŋ cəŋ ja huak te? kamrəŋ te?*  
go.down in hatch place climb.up it before he  
(he) went down through the hatch at the place he had climbed up before

R.50

*ka<sup>n</sup>dəw? leih tam poŋ to? k<sup>h</sup>aj k<sup>h</sup>ra? ʔuməŋ ʔək te?*  
child go.down follow stairs to path tunnel out it  
The boy went down the stairs and to the path out of the tunnel

R.51

*wat p<sup>h</sup>ət cət k<sup>h</sup>ua te? tɛ mait*  
when finished stop end PRO.SUBJ happy  
When he came to the end he was happy

R.52

*huak poŋ ʔək to hit pi? pət ti? kamrəŋ*  
climb ladder out at casket REL open one first.time  
(He) climbed up the ladder and out of the casket that he opened before

R.53

*wat pət ɲia? ʔia te? cewp sɔm ʔawp pu*  
when finish house of his meet eat rice evening  
When (he) arrived to his house (he) found dinner ready

R.54

*ma?saɯm ka<sup>n</sup>dəw? saŋkɔ nian k<sup>h</sup>e?*  
night.time child peer look moon  
That night the boy stared at the moon

R.55

*ʔat samah ŋɔ niŋ hɔ pa p<sup>h</sup>a khaŋ pət ʔdein ʔaik*  
light at lighthouse switched.on long.time sleep

R.56

*kam t<sup>h</sup>ɔh bat kɔh masa?*  
after.that when wake morning  
After that when (he) awoke in the morning

R.57

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? <sup>n</sup>di kuncɛ pi? ɔh te? ka?ɛwh t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
child get key REL had PRO.SUBJ yesterday DEM  
The child got that key that he had yesterday

R.58

*<sup>m</sup>bra? mɛ:h hew pət hit maw p<sup>h</sup>rain t<sup>h</sup>ɔ*  
sneak ?? go open casket ?? old Dem.  
He snuck out and went and opened the old casket

R.59

*<sup>m</sup>bra? <sup>ʔ</sup>mɛ tɔ hew la? pu<sup>m</sup>ew pi? laha? tem mok ka?ɛwh*  
sneak again run go to friends REL play full ?? yesterday  
(he) snuck again and ran to his friends that he had played with all yesterday

R.60

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? mait <sup>ʔ</sup>ap<sup>h</sup>awm sam cewp miah pihmew te?*  
child happy FUT meet with friend his  
The child was happy to meet with his friends

R.61

*<sup>ʔ</sup>u: jɔŋ pihmew hew la laŋ*  
Neg. know friends go to ASP  
(He) didn't know his friends were coming

R.62a

*wat jo? pi<sup>m</sup>ew te?*  
when see friends his  
When he saw his friends,

R.62b

*ka<sup>n</sup>dbw? ti? puj pa piṃew laʔɔj puj te?*  
child one CLF lead friends three CLF his  
The one boy led his three friends to play at his house

R.62b

*len laha niṅ jia? ia te?*  
play at house of his  
to play at his house

R.64

*pɔh pɔŋ kaj jo? pa hɔ pa pha khan tʰɔ niṅ kɔ? ti tia*  
open window have.exist see 2SG lighthouse that at island small  
At the open window he saw that lighthouse on the small island

R.65

*sajia paih jia? ia te?*  
close away house of his  
Close but far away from his house



## APPENDIX F

### BO LUANG SONG

By Wandī

เจ็ย ละเวื้อะ นาง วันดี

Recorded mid 2012.

#### Intro:

BL1

*ʔa mɛ mu maʔ ʔa pen tʰɔ*  
say.speak mother plural 2SG speak.say who DEM

Lit: Say mother ours, say is who?

Talk mother of ours, tell (us) who we are

#### Verse 1

BL2

*ʔah man pi rək ʔiŋ*  
say.speak what REL bring PRT

Tell us of one who brings to us...

BL3

*rək kuan saŋ ʰdaŋ ʔapɔj*  
bring baby elephant long trunk  
brings a baby elephant with a long trunk

BL4

*rək kuan moj ʰdaŋ ʔadik*  
bring baby bull long horns  
brings a baby bull with long horns

BL5

*rək kuan kit ˈdaŋ sata?*  
bring baby pheasant long tail  
brings a baby pheasant with a long tail

BL6

*rək kuan ka? ʔa p<sup>h</sup>oit ʔambɔm*  
bring baby fish speak tip.point mouth  
brings a baby fish (that) talks with a pointy mouth

Chorus A:

BL7

*hew niŋ cik hew bik k<sup>h</sup>ana*  
go to field go mend.dig paddy.walkway  
Go to the rice field, go and mend the walkway between the paddies

BL8

*jo jia saw klɔm puaŋ*  
see aunt Saw carry.on.shoulder stick with 2 baskets  
See Aunty Saw carrying baskets on her shoulder (with a pole between)

BL9

*jo ta? ɲuaŋ kaŋ cɔŋ*  
see uncle ɲuaŋ hold umbrella  
See uncle Njuang, holding an umbrella

BL10

*kaj luk nɔŋ laʔa puŋ*  
have.is child grandchild 2 clf.people  
They have two grandchildren

Chorus B:

BL11

ʔε        kotət        ʔəŋ ʔε        kotəŋ  
chicken clucking        chicken clucking  
Chickens clucking  
kotət - is the sound that chickens make

BL12

ʔε        p<sup>h</sup>alaŋ        ʔan        daŋ        ciam  
chicken foreigner across long MaeJam  
foreign chicken from across the MaeJam river

BL13

kok sak sak ʔiŋ ʔo        ʔε        kəŋ  
eat full full it INTERJ chicken female  
eats to over full, oh, the mother chicken

BL14

kok hə<sup>i</sup>ŋ hə<sup>i</sup>ŋ ʔo        ʔε        ɲain  
eat much much INTERJ chicken male  
eats too much too much, oh, the father chicken

**Verse 2:**

BL15

ciak ʔəŋ ʔeŋ        ŋa k<sup>h</sup>əŋ k<sup>h</sup>eŋ        to samow  
frog type of frog        sit cross legged on stone  
The ʔəŋ ʔeŋ frog sits cross legged on a rock

BL16

ciak ʔain k<sup>h</sup>rɔw na ʔu: jəŋ sokik  
frog come new        NEG know scared of  
the frog just arrived, it doesn't know what to be scared of

BL17

*na pi ʔda ʔatik na ʔu: jɔŋ so kaiŋ*  
REL fight hit each other NEG know sore head  
When it fights another, it doesn't know it has a headache

BL18

*pi plain naʔ ʔu: jɔŋ kuat sɔm*  
REL no food / doesn't eat NEG know want eat  
The one who has no food, doesn't know (he) wants to eat (is hungry)

BL19

*paih hlaʔ nɔŋ ʔaw tɔŋ hlaʔ jo pi saʔaw*  
pick leaf type take burn leaf teak REL smelly  
Pick a nɔŋ leaf aw, burn the teak leaf that is smelly

BL20

*puan nam manaw ʔu: liak*  
eat lime.juice NEG swallow  
Eat lime juice (but) didn't swallow (it)

BL21

*puan ciak ʔu: lɔk tɔhŋa ʔu: lɔj*  
eat frog NEG able curry NEG yummy  
not able to eat frog, curry not tasty

BL22

*poit pi kiah la ʔe*  
pick.up v.chain give to chicken  
pick it up and give it to the chickens  
This line repeats another 2 times

## **RESUME**

Name: Gregory Blok  
Date of Birth: 10 August 1970  
Place of Birth: New Zealand  
Institutions Attended: 2003, BMin, Bible College of NZ